

English 10 (6)

ЛЮБІ ДРУЗИ!

Ви тримаєте в руках підручник з англійської мови “**English 10 (6)**”, який продовжує серію підручників для вивчення англійської мови як другої іноземної.

Ця книга складається зі вступного курсу, 7 розділів основного курсу та додатку.

Вступний курс (*Revision*) допоможе вам повторити та пригадати вивчене на попередніх етапах навчання.

Кожен розділ **Основного курсу (*Basic Course*)** складається з 12 уроків.

Протягом шостого року навчання ви будете вчитися спілкуватися за такими темами:

1. *Моє життя (стиль життя)*. У цьому розділі ви будете спілкуватися про здоровий спосіб життя, розваги, користь активного відпочинку, а також розповідати однокласникам про своє дозвілля та повсякденні дії. Тут ви зможете отримати необхідні навички листування з друзями за кордоном.
2. *Книги у моєму житті*. Шкільна бібліотека, улюблені книги, письменники, літературні герої – ось основні теми, які включені до цього розділу.
3. *Засоби масової інформації*. Дізнайтесь про різні види джерел інформації, періодичних видань, їхні рубрики та обговоріть це з друзями.
4. *Музика у нашому житті*. Розділ присвячений музичним стилям, інструментам, композиторам та музикантам тощо.
5. *Об'єднане Королівство Великобританії та Північної Ірландії*. Уроки цього розділу пропонують вам цікаву і корисну інформацію про країну, мову якої ви вивчаєте.
6. *Україна*. Поділіться своїми знаннями і враженнями про рідний край з друзями з англійських країн.
7. *Освіта*. Спілкуйтесь про своє шкільне життя та улюблені предмети з друзями, а також дізнайтесь про навчання у школах інших країн світу.

Кожний розділ має чітку структуру. Розпочинають його уроки “**Language Material**”, які призначені для ознайомлення з новими словами і виразами. Зверніть особливу увагу на вимову звуків, що входять до їх складу, відпрацюйте інтонацію речень з ними, розгляньте приклади ситуацій та діалогів з цими виразами та використовуйте їх як зразок для побудови власних висловлювань.

Уроки **“Grammar Section”** присвячені вивченню граматики англійської мови. У граматичному інформаційному куточку ви знайдете інформацію про граматичні структури, їх комунікативне значення та особливості використання у мовленні.

“Oral Practice” пропонує вам спілкування з друзями. Ці уроки будуть навчати вас культури спілкування, допоможуть розширити тематику спілкування з певної сфери та закріпити вивчене у мовленні.

Уроки **“Reading”** та **“Writing”** призначені для розвитку вміння читання та письма.

“Time for Fun” – це куточок для розваг, де подані різноманітні кросворди, ігри, гуморески тощо.

“Homework” пропонує вам багато цікавих завдань для виконання вдома.

“Home Reading” – тексти для домашнього читання – допоможуть вам не лише вдосконалити уміння читати англійською мовою, а й дізнатися багато нового з кожної теми, що вивчається.

Розділ **“Check Yourself”** містить тестові завдання для самоперевірки. За кожен правильну відповідь отримаєте один бал. Відповіді ви знайдете наприкінці тесту.

Крім того, кожна серія уроків знайомить вас із англійськими прислів'ями, приказками та крилатими виразами, містить спеціальні вправи для розвитку навичок пошуку необхідної інформації в Інтернеті, пропонує корисні рекомендації щодо написання листів, творів, рефератів тощо.

Проектні роботи, що включені до кожної серії уроків, нададуть вам змогу розкрити та розвинути свої здібності, а також навчать вас працювати разом: розподіляти роботу, займатися саме тим, що у вас виходить якнайкраще і разом творити спільний проект.

Не всі завдання підручника мають однакову складність: зверніть увагу на вправи, номери яких позначені червоним та синім кольорами. Червоний колір вказує на завдання підвищеної складності, які вимагають творчого мислення. Вправи з номерами синього кольору призначені для тих, хто бажає знати більше.

Завершує підручник **Додаток (Supplement)**, у якому ви знайдете список неправильних дієслів, тексти для читання та аудіювання, англо-український словник.

**З повагою,
Автор.**

REVISION

LESSONS 1—3

Happy New School Year!

1. Greet your classmates and teacher using the sentences given below.

Good morning./Hi!/Hello!

I am glad to see you!

How are you? — Fine, thank you.

I wish you good luck this school year.

I want to wish you to be healthy and happy.

I wish you every success and good health!

I wish you a great success in your work/study.

I'd like to wish you to have clever and well-bred pupils.

May all your dreams come true!

I wish you all happiness in the world!

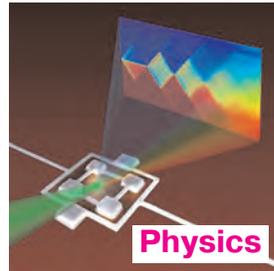
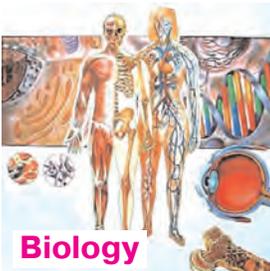
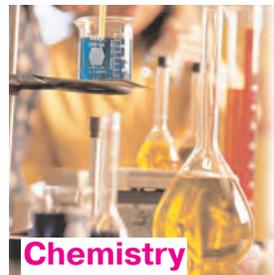
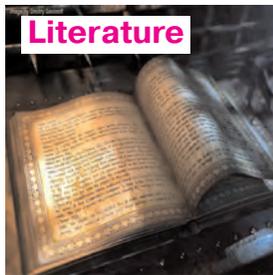
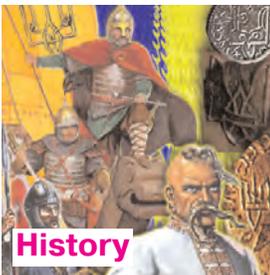
I wish you good luck.

All the best!

Thank you, the same to you.

Let me wish/congratulate you...

2. Match the school subjects with their description. Say what subjects you will study in the 10th form. Can you add any more?



- 1) The science that studies the structure of substances and the way they change.
- 2) The science that studies physical objects and substances and natural forces such as light, heat and movement.
- 3) The scientific study of animals and plants.
- 4) The study of all the things that happened in the past, especially the political, social or economic life of people.
- 5) The study of the countries, seas, rivers, towns etc. of the world.
- 6) The subject that studies books, plays, poems etc.

3. Listening.

a) Look at the pictures and listen to Denis talking about himself. Say what he wants to be in the future.



**a veterinary
surgeon (a vet)**



**a doctor,
a surgeon**



**a scientist,
a chemist**

b) Listen to the text again. Say which words Denis uses in his speech. Write them down into your exercise-book and make the sentences with them.

- | | | |
|---|---|-------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Physics | <input type="checkbox"/> English | <input type="checkbox"/> football |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Chemistry | <input type="checkbox"/> a language | <input type="checkbox"/> basketball |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Biology | <input type="checkbox"/> a technical school | <input type="checkbox"/> an animal |
| <input type="checkbox"/> History | <input type="checkbox"/> a university | <input type="checkbox"/> a cat |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Mathematics | <input type="checkbox"/> a college | <input type="checkbox"/> a dog |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Geography | <input type="checkbox"/> a trade school | <input type="checkbox"/> a writer |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a science | <input type="checkbox"/> a hobby | <input type="checkbox"/> a poet |

c) Tell your classmates about Denis.

4. a) Read the text and explain the meanings of the words in bold.

All **citizens** of Ukraine have the **right to education**.

The educational system in our country includes **pre-school education, secondary education (general or vocational education) and higher education**.

Pre-school education consists of **kindergartens**. Children learn to paint, draw and count there. But pre-school education isn't **compulsory** – children can get it at home. Compulsory education is for children from 6 (7) to 18 years of age.

The main **link** in the system of education is the **general secondary school**. Children start school at the age of 6 and leave it at 18.

There are **various types** of schools: **general secondary schools, colleges, so-called lyceums, gymnasia and so on**.

The **term** of study in a general secondary school is 12 years and it consists of **primary, middle and upper stages**.

The first **stage** of education is a primary school for **grades 1 through 4**.

The second stage (middle) is a secondary school for grades 5 through 9. At the middle stage of a secondary school the children get the **basic knowledge** about nature and society at the **lessons** of **History, Algebra, Literature, Physics** and many other **subjects**.

After the 9th form pupils can either continue to **attend** the same school (high school – grades 10–12) or **enter a vocational school** or a **trade school**. At vocational and trade schools young people can **master** a number of useful **skills** (for example, those of a technical or a computer operator).

Those who **leave** the general secondary school and vocational or trade school receive **the school-living certificate**. Then they have the right to pass **standardized tests** and **enter** higher educational institutions – **universities**.

School life is the most beautiful time of our life.

b) Tell your teacher about your education. Use questions given below.

- 1) How old are you?
- 2) Where do you study?
- 3) How many years have you studied at school?
- 4) Did you attend a kindergarten in the childhood?

6. Describe the photo given below. Say what school subject it is. Use the words and sentences:

I see... in the picture.

He is ...-ing.

This is... .

They are ...-ing.

There is/are... .

A teacher, pupils, a classroom, the lesson of ..., Computer Studies, in the ... form, to tell the pupils about ..., to listen attentively, to show, to teach, to work on computer, a computer, a keyboard, a monitor, a screen, a desk, to master a skill at using a computer.



7. Work in pairs. Ask your friend as in the example and guess what school subject he/she is thinking about. Use the general questions only.

For example:

P₁: Do we play football at these lessons?

P₂: No, we don't.

P₁: Do we do the experiments at these lessons?

P₂: Yes, we do.

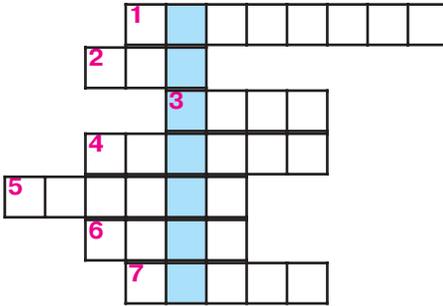
P₁: Do we study the structure of substances at these lessons?

P₂: Yes, we do.

P₁: Is it a lesson of Chemistry?

P₂: Yes, it is. You are right.

8. Do the crossword and find out what Maksym's favourite school subject is (*down*).



1. A book that contains information about a subject that people study.
2. A school thing for writing or drawing with ink.
3. A substance used for joining things together.
4. A container for keeping papers, albums, exercise-books in.
5. A wooden school thing, used for writing or drawing, containing a thin stick of a black or coloured substance.
6. A piece of furniture like a table, which you sit at to write and work at school.
7. Small sticks of a white or coloured substance, used for writing or drawing on the blackboard.

9. Make a report “Knowledge in Our Life”.

Start like this: *Knowledge is the facts, skills and understanding that you gain through learning or experience.*

Finish your report with one of the sayings given below.

<i>Train hard fight easy.</i> A proverb	<i>Важко у навчанні, легко у бою.</i> Прислів'я
<i>To know everything is to know nothing.</i> A proverb	<i>Знати все – це нічого не знати.</i> Прислів'я
<i>As for me, all I know is that I know nothing.</i> Socrates	<i>Щодо мене, то я знаю тільки те, що я нічого не знаю.</i> Сократ
<i>Learning is the eye of the mind.</i> A proverb	<i>Ученому – світ, а невченому – тьма.</i> Прислів'я
<i>Live and learn.</i> A proverb	<i>Вік живи – вік навчайся.</i> Прислів'я

LESSONS 4–6

Weather

1. Look at the picture and choose the words (adjectives) to describe it. Can you think any more adjectives which describe weather?

- sunny
- hot
- windy
- cold
- cloudy
- misty
- slippery
- rainy
- wet
- frosty



2. Listening.

- a) Look at the pictures and listen to Katrine talking about the weather. Say which photo she is describing.



- b) Listen to Katrine's story again. Say which words she uses in her report. Write them down into your exercise-book.

- | | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|--|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> the sun | <input type="checkbox"/> windy | <input type="checkbox"/> ill |
| <input type="checkbox"/> to hail | <input type="checkbox"/> a snowfall | <input type="checkbox"/> weekend |
| <input type="checkbox"/> lightning | <input type="checkbox"/> to rain | <input type="checkbox"/> tomorrow |
| <input type="checkbox"/> cool | <input type="checkbox"/> to cycle | <input type="checkbox"/> to swim |
| <input type="checkbox"/> hot | <input type="checkbox"/> a village | <input type="checkbox"/> to ride a horse |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a thunderstorm | <input type="checkbox"/> foggy | <input type="checkbox"/> a bus |

- c) Talk about today's weather.

3. Read the text and say 5-10 sentences about any season in Ukraine.

The climate of Ukraine

Ukraine is situated in the south-eastern part of Central Europe.

The climate of the country is moderate. Winter is rather mild, with no severe frosts but with regular snowfalls everywhere except the south. The rivers and lakes freeze in winter.

The days are usually sunny in Ukraine, typically 230 to 236 days during the year. The Carpathian and the Crimean mountain ranges protect the Trans Carpathia and the Black Sea Coast of Crimea from cold masses of arctic air coming from the north.

The average winter temperature varies from 8 to 15 degrees below zero in the north and from 0 to 5 degrees above zero in the south. But sometimes the temperature falls to 25 degrees below zero in the north part of the country in winter.

The warm sunny spring days come at the end of March. The snow and ice melt therefore the fertile black soil is well watered in spring.

Average summer temperature is about 25 degrees above zero; sometimes it reaches over 35 degrees above zero during the day. Summer is quite hot and dry, with occasional showers and thunderstorms.

It often rains in Ukraine in autumn. Sometimes it snows at the end of October.

But the climate is different in different parts of Ukraine. The north and the north-east regions are the coldest. The warmest region of Ukraine is the Southern Coast of Crimea with temperatures reaching 39 degrees above zero in summer; however pleasant sea breezes soften the heat.

The climate of Ukraine enable Ukrainians to grow various kinds of agricultural plants in different regions of the country.



4. Speaking skills. Talk about the weather this summer. Say where you spent your summer holidays.

Start with: *Let me say a few words about the weather this summer. I spent my summer holidays It is situated ...*

5. a) Work in pairs. Ask your friend about his/her plans for tomorrow (at the weekend, on Tuesday, etc.) as in the example.

For example:

P₁: What **are you going to do** after classes tomorrow?

P₂: If the weather **is good**, **I'll play football** with my friends in the yard. And what are you going to do at the weekend?

P₁: If **it rains**, I'll play on computer or read a book. ...

b) Look at the people in the pictures and say what they are doing. Can you remember any more activities? Say what you like to do.



c) Complete the sentences.

In Winter

If the weather is fine, I can

If there is much snow on the ground, I can ...

If it is frosty, I can ...

If the weather is bad, I can ...

I like winter, because I can ...

In Spring

If the weather is fine, I can

If the weather is bad, I can ...

I like spring, because I can ...

In Summer

If the weather is fine, I can ...
If it is hot, I can ...
If it rains, I can ...
If the weather is bad, I can ...
I like summer, because I can ...

In Autumn

If the weather is fine, I can ...
If it is misty, I can ...
If the weather is bad, I can ...
I like autumn, because I can ...

- 6.** Look at the picture and say which month of the year you think it is. Tell your friends about this picture. Use the words and phrases:

A winter day, the weather, snow, the ground, to snow, frosty, cold, a lake, to freeze/to become frozen, the countryside, to skate, can/cannot well, a family, to spend.

I see... in the picture.

The weather is... .

This is... .

It is.../It isn't... .

There is/are... .



- 7.** Find a photo or a picture of nature. Describe the weather in it.
- 8.** Read the dialogue “A telephone conversation”. Oleh speaks to Tom by phone. But they have a bad connection. Oleh doesn't hear some words. Complete and act out the dialogue.
- Hullo!
 - Hello! Could I speak to Tom Brown?
 - It's me. Who is speaking?
 - Good morning, Tom! It's Oleh Velychko. I am calling to wish many happy returns of the day to you! ... birthday! May all your ... come true!
 - Thank much, Oleh. How are you?
 - Fine, And you?
 - Me too, thanks. Speak louder, please. I cannot ... you well. .. you in Kyiv?
 - No, I'm not. I am at the Black
 - Oh, it's great! What is ... like there?
 - Sorry? Could you say it again?
 - How do you like the weather ...?
 - Oh! The weather is It is sunny and The temperature is 30 degrees ... zero.
 - Does it rain sometimes?
 - It ... yesterday. But today. There isn't any ... in the sky.
 - Can you talk?
 - Yes, of course.
 - How do you spend time there?
 - Oh, I ... , ... and play ...with my friends all days long. The day before yesterday we went to
 - Sorry. I cannot ...
 - OK. I'll call you from Yalta later. The communication is better there.
 - OK. Bye-bye.
 - So long!

- 9.** Write down the weather forecast for tomorrow. Use the phrases and words given below:
- They are expecting ... tomorrow. (rain, a windy/sunny day, fog/mist, etc.)
- It will/will be ...
- The temperature will be ...

LESSONS 7–9

Describing People

1. Look at the picture and choose the words to describe Helen. Can you think any more adjectives which we describe people's appearance?

- a young woman
- straight
- chestnut
- large
- freckled
- a girl
- fair
- round
- full
- square
- hazel
- sun-tanned
- blue
- thin
- wavy
- narrow



She is ...
Her face/lips is/are ...
She has got ... hair/eyes.

2. Listening.

- a) Look at the pictures and listen to Michael talking about his elder sister Mary. Say which photo Mary is shown in.



- b) Listen to Michael's story again. Say which words he uses in his report. Write them down into your exercise-book.

About Mary's Age

- young
- elderly
- a girl of 15
- about thirty
- a woman of 25 years of age
- a teenager

About Mary's Built and Height

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> slim | <input type="checkbox"/> plump | <input type="checkbox"/> tall |
| <input type="checkbox"/> short | <input type="checkbox"/> thin | <input type="checkbox"/> medium height |
| <input type="checkbox"/> petite | <input type="checkbox"/> well-built | <input type="checkbox"/> overweight |
-

About Mary's Hair

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> grey | <input type="checkbox"/> red | <input type="checkbox"/> long |
| <input type="checkbox"/> brown | <input type="checkbox"/> dark | <input type="checkbox"/> bobbed |
| <input type="checkbox"/> curly | <input type="checkbox"/> thin | <input type="checkbox"/> short |
| <input type="checkbox"/> thick | <input type="checkbox"/> shoulder length | <input type="checkbox"/> red |
-

About Mary's Eyes

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> hazel | <input type="checkbox"/> narrow | <input type="checkbox"/> small |
| <input type="checkbox"/> green | <input type="checkbox"/> blue | <input type="checkbox"/> slanting |
| <input type="checkbox"/> grey | <input type="checkbox"/> large | <input type="checkbox"/> brown |
-

About Mary's Nose

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> long | <input type="checkbox"/> straight |
| <input type="checkbox"/> short | <input type="checkbox"/> snub |
-

About Mary's Face

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> square | <input type="checkbox"/> triangular | <input type="checkbox"/> pale |
| <input type="checkbox"/> oval | <input type="checkbox"/> wrinkled | <input type="checkbox"/> tanned |
| <input type="checkbox"/> round | <input type="checkbox"/> freckled | <input type="checkbox"/> rosy |
-

About Mary's Distinctive Features

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> a mole | <input type="checkbox"/> a moustache |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a tattoo | <input type="checkbox"/> glasses |
-

About Mary's Character

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> kind | <input type="checkbox"/> strict | <input type="checkbox"/> emotional |
| <input type="checkbox"/> clever | <input type="checkbox"/> talkative | <input type="checkbox"/> lazy |
| <input type="checkbox"/> cheerful | <input type="checkbox"/> shy | <input type="checkbox"/> hard-working |

c) Tell your classmates about your sister's (brother's/father's/mother's/friend's) appearance.

3. Read the extract from the short novel "Red" by William Somerset Maugham. Look up the words in bold in the dictionary.

It appears that Red was the most **comely** thing you ever saw. I've talked to quite a number of people who knew him in those days, white men and they all agree that the first time you saw him his beauty just took your **breath** away. They called him Red **on account** of his **flaming** hair. It had a natural wave and he wore it long. He was tall, six **feet** and an **inch** or two and he was made like a Greek god, **broad** in the shoulders and thin in the **flanks**; he was like Apollo. His skin was **dazzling** white, milky, like satin.

And his face was just as beautiful as his body. He had large blue eyes, very dark, so that some say they were black and **unlike** most red-haired people he had dark **eyebrows** and long dark **lashes**. His features were perfectly regular and his mouth was like a **scarlet wound**. He was twenty.

He was unique. There never was anyone more beautiful. He was a happy accident of nature.

Red was an American sailor. One day he landed at the **cove**. There was a native **hut** there; a young girl came out and invited him to enter...

I can speak of Red only from **hearsay**, but I saw the girl three years after he first met her and she was nineteen then. You cannot imagine how **exquisite** she was. She had the **passionate grace** of the **hibiscus** and the rich colour. She was rather tall, slim, with the **delicate** features of her face and large eyes like pools of still water under the palm trees; her hair, black and curling, fell down her back and she wore a **wreath** of flowers. Her hands were lovely. They were small, so **exquisitely** formed. And in those days she laughed easily. Her smile was so **delightful** that it made your knees shake. Her skin was like a field of ripe corn on a summer day. Good Heavens, how can I describe her? She was too beautiful to be real.

And those two young things, she was sixteen and he was twenty, fell in love with one another at first sight.

They were children. She was good and sweet and kind. I know nothing of him and I like to think that he was **ingenuous** and **frank**. I like to think that his **soul** was so comely as his body.

b) Say what epithets and metaphors the author uses to describe the characters of the novel.

c) Describe one of the characters of the novel.

4. a) Find the opposite qualities. Make word-combinations and sentences with them.

b) Find the adjectives which are synonyms.

c) Tell your classmates about your appearance and character.

About Appearance		About Character	
thin	plump	polite	stupid
dark	pale	tidy	mean
slim	blond	hot-tempered	reserved
large	long	shy	gentle
wavy	thick	honest	sociable
black	young	emotional	silent
snub	small	generous	hard-hearted
curly	tall	hard-working	rude
short	fair	strict	sad
rosy	overweight	kind	steady
elderly	straight	clever	untidy
		talkative	lazy
		cheerful	greedy

5. Work in pairs. Play a game: ask your friend about your classmates' appearance as in the example. Guess who he/she is thinking about. Who is faster?

Use alternative, general and special questions.

For example:

P₁: **Is it a girl or a boy?** (*Alternative question*)

P₂: It is a girl.

Is it a girl? (*General question*)

P₁: No, it isn't.

Is her hair long? (*General question*)

P₂: No, it isn't.

Are his eyes grey or hazel? (*Alternative question*)

P₁: They are neither grey nor hazel.

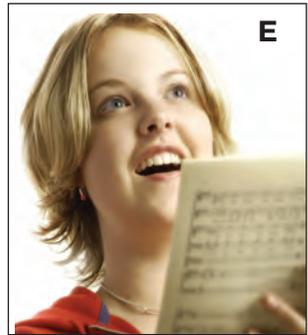
What colour is her hair? (*Special question*)

P₂: She has got fair hair.

What colour are his eyes? (*Special question*)

P₁: ...

6. Look at the people in the pictures and describe them.



7. a) Find out in the crossword words (down and across) which describe people's appearance, make the word-combinations with them and guess which singer is described.

* There are 13 words in the crossword. The first letters of the words are in the circles.

Q	W	E	R	T	Y	G	U	I	O	P	A
S	T	D	F	G	H	R	J	J	J	K	L
Z	H	S	X	C	V	E	Y	E	S	V	B
D	I	H	A	I	R	Y	F	G	T	H	J
W	N	O	S	E	E	E	R	T	R	Y	U
C	V	R	N	B	D	N	M	O	A	I	U
F	Y	T	U	T	T	R	E	L	I	P	S
A	J	H	B	G	F	U	L	L	G	T	Y
C	D	F	G	H	J	K	L	R	H	N	B
E	S	Q	U	A	R	E	R	T	T	R	H



b) Describe your favourite singer.

8. Make a report “People’s appearance”. Find some pictures or photos to illustrate your report.

Use the phrases:

Describing people’s appearance we should say about ...

People’s hair/nose/etc. may be ...

Look at the girl/boy in the picture.

His/her hair/eyes ... He/she has got ...

9. Project work.

1) “My Parents”.

Make a wall-newspaper (or an album) about your parents.

Write an essay about your father and mother, add their photos, describe their appearance and character, tell your classmates about their professions and work.

Put your stories together into the wall-newspaper/album.

2) “My Future Profession”.

Work in groups.

Group A. Study what your classmates want to be in the future. Write some sentences about these professions and where people are trained in them. Find some photos or pictures.

Group B. Study what school subjects your classmates like most of all. Write some sentences about these subjects and teachers. What do you do at their lessons? Why are these subjects important for your future life?

Group C. Find or write some funny stories about life and work of people of different professions. Draw some caricatures.

Group D. Find or think out some crosswords about different professions.

Make a presentation of your work at the English lesson.

BASIC COURSE

UNIT 1 *** IT'S MY LIFE

I. Language Material

1. a) Listen and repeat the words in the right column.
Pay attention to the correct pronunciation.
b) Read the sentences in the left column. Pay attention to the proper intonation.
c) Make up some sentences with the words in the right column to tell your friends about your life.

The word '**life**' has several meanings.
Read some of them.

Life is the period between a person's **birth** and **death**.

But a life is also a person's **experience**.
So you can **lead** a happy, **full** life.

A **way of life** is the way someone chooses to live his life.

For example: you can have a traditional way of life or a healthy way of life, etc.

Your **working life** is the part of your life when you are working. Now you study at school but in several years you will start your working life.

After your classes you have **free time** (or **spare time**). It's time when you are free, you are not working and have no work.

Where do you study?

*Do you have **enough** free time during a week?*

What did you do in your spare time?

life [laɪf] життя

birth [bɜːθ] народження

death [deθ] смерть

an experience [ɪks'ɪəriəns]
досвід

to lead [led] **life** – жити
(певним життям)

full [fʊl] повний

way of life – стиль життя

working life – час, коли ти працюєш

free [friː]/**spare** [spɛə] **time** – вільний час

enough [ɪ'naʊ] досить

A **rest** is a period of time when you are not doing anything **tiring** and you can **relax** or sleep. So if you **are tired**, you **take/have a rest**.

Don't mix up the words 'rest' and '**relaxation**'. Relaxation is a way of resting and **enjoying** yourself. So you can play a piano or play football **for relaxation**. Maybe you **enjoy** reading. *What do you usually do for relaxation? What do you enjoy?*

Leisure is time when you are not working or studying and can relax and do things you **enjoy**. *Could you tell your classmates what you do in your leisure time?*

Life is beautiful! So, **have the time of your life**. But don't forget about your **duties**! As the English say, business before pleasure. *What duties do you have?*

Your life will be full and happy if you are **healthy**. To be healthy you should **lead a healthy way of life**. *What does it mean in your opinion?*

Well. You should eat **healthy food**. **To keep fit** you should **go in for sports** or do your morning exercises every day. *What kinds of sports do you know? Which of them do you go in for?*

Some people are fond of **extreme** sports or games. Look at the pictures on page 24.

rest [rest] відпочинок
tiring [ˈtaɪərɪŋ] виснажливий
to be tired [ˈtaɪəd] втомитись
to relax [rɪˈlæks], **to take/have a rest** – відпочивати
relaxation [ˌrɪ:læksəʃ(ə)n] розслаблення
to enjoy [ɪnˈdʒɔɪ] насолоджуватись, отримувати задоволення

leisure [ˈleɪzə] дозвілля

have the time of your life – насолоджуватись життям
a duty [ˈdjuːti] обов'язок

healthy [ˈhelθi] здоровий

healthy food – корисна їжа
to keep fit – бути в гарній фізичній формі
to go in for sports – займатись спортом

extreme [ɪksˈtriːm] екстремальний



parachute jumping [ˈpærəʃu:t]



speleology [ˌspi:lɪˈɒlədʒi]



canoeing [kəˈnu:ɪŋ]



freeriding [ˈfriːˌraɪdɪŋ]



parkour [pɑːˈku:r]



mountain climbing [ˈklaɪmɪŋ]

Extreme sports and games are often very **difficult** and **dangerous**. It's **necessary** to **receive** special training to go in for these kinds of sports.

Do you go in for extreme sports?

Where did you receive training in these kinds of sport?

Many people have a **hobby**. It is an activity that you enjoy doing in your free time. Your hobbies can be reading or listening to music, horse-riding or cycling, playing football or playing the piano and so on.

Do you have a hobby?

Besides there are many **entertainments** for people. For example, films, television, performances, shows, concerts etc.

You can go to the theatre, cinema or **disco** in your free time.

Where do you go in your free time?

difficult [ˈdɪfɪk(ə)lɪt] складний
dangerous [ˈdeɪndʒərəs] небезпечний

It's necessary ... – необхідно
to receive [rɪˈsi:v] отримати

a hobby [ˈhɒbi] хобі

an entertainment [ˌentəˈteɪnmənt] розважальний захід

a disco [ˈdɪskəʊ] дискотека

But if you want to be healthy and happy, say 'no' to **cigarettes**, **spirits** (alcoholic drinks) and **drugs**!

Smoking, drinking and **taking drugs** are not only bad **habits** but also serious illnesses. They can kill you.

So, as the English proverb says, "In every beginning think of the end".

a cigarette [ˌsɪgə'ret] цигарка

spirits ['spɪrɪts] міцні напої

drugs [ˈdrʌɡz] наркотики

to smoke ['sməʊk] палити

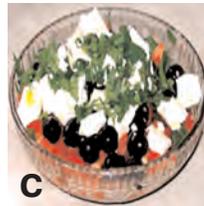
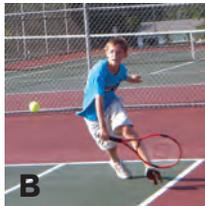
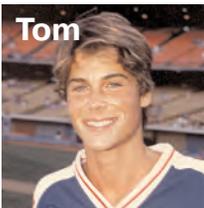
taking drugs – вживання наркотиків

to take drugs – вживати наркотики

a habit ['hæbɪt] звичка

2. Listening.

a) Look at the pictures and listen to the children talking about a healthy way of life. Say which photos the boys and the girls are talking about.



b) Listen to children's story again. Say which words they use in their reports. Write them down into your exercise-book.

Helen

to eat

apples

carrots

to drink

fat

fish

meat

vegetables

sugar

Tom

to play football

never

a sports school

to play tennis

always

a sports section

to go in for sport

a bad habit

a sports club

Peter

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> to agree | <input type="checkbox"/> to walk | <input type="checkbox"/> morning |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a shape | <input type="checkbox"/> to run | <input type="checkbox"/> to keep fit |
| <input type="checkbox"/> to jog | <input type="checkbox"/> evening | <input type="checkbox"/> to do morning exercises |

Ann

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> to advise | <input type="checkbox"/> to smoke | <input type="checkbox"/> a drugstore |
| <input type="checkbox"/> must | <input type="checkbox"/> fizzy drinks | <input type="checkbox"/> a cigarette |
| <input type="checkbox"/> can | <input type="checkbox"/> to drink | <input type="checkbox"/> tea |

c) Say what you do to be healthy.

Use the sentences:

Let me say a few words about ... / May I say?

I'd like to say a few words, too.

Excuse my interrupting you but I cannot help saying about ...

Help me, please. (Could you help me?)/Thank you very much.

What is the English for ... ?

3. a) Read the text and say what it deals with. Do you agree with the boy?

Different people like different things and have different hobbies.

As for me, I go in for sport, I like to play tennis. I have been playing tennis for 5 years. I go to play tennis every day. Sometimes I take part in different competitions.

To be in a good shape I go jogging every morning and do my morning exercises.

Sport is a very important part of our life. Many people go in for sport. They go jogging and walking, swim, skate, ski, train themselves in sports clubs and different sections.

Physical training is an important subject at school. Pupils play volleyball, football, basketball.

Everyone should do all he can to stay healthy and choose the sport he is fond of. I don't understand people who say that they like sport, but they only watch sport on TV.

If you go in for sport you feel, look and sleep much better. Your physical appearance will change, too. You will be slimmer and stronger. You will not often fall ill.

You can ask me why I go in for sport. I do it because it is very important for a man to be strong and well-built. A man or a boy should keep fit and he have to learn how to lose.

My favourite proverb says, "A sound mind in a sound body".

b) Say what the boy does to be strong, well-built and healthy.

c) Answer the questions and say if you think sport plays an important part of your life.

- 1) Do you like sport?
- 2) What kind of sports do you like most of all?
- 3) Do you go in for sport?
- 4) Why do you go in for sport?
- 5) When should children begin to go in for sport?
- 6) Do you train yourself in a sports club or section?
- 7) Do you always do your morning exercises?
- 8) Do you go jogging in the mornings?
- 9) How can sport change you?
- 10) Do you watch sports programmes on TV?
- 11) Do you root for your favourite team on a stadium?
- 12) What do you do at the lessons of Physical Training at school?

4. a) Work in pairs. Tell each other about your daily routine. Listen to your friend and take notes.

For example:

P₁: I usually get up at 7 o'clock. I wash myself, clean my teeth and do my morning exercises. Then I make my bed and dress myself. I have breakfast at 8 o'clock. After that I go to school.

I usually have 6 lessons. The first lesson starts at half past 8. The lessons are over at a quarter to 2.

I come back home after classes at 2 o'clock. At first I have dinner. I have to help my parents, so then I do shopping and clean my room. I dust furniture, vacuum the carpet and mop the floor. I usually go shopping to the nearest supermarket. After that I do my homework. Then I have some free time. I can play football with my friends, read a book, play computer games or watch TV.

I have supper at 7 o'clock, when my parents come back home. After supper we tell each other how we spent a day and watch news or films on TV. Sometimes my dad and me play chess.

I go to bed at 10 o'clock.

b) Ask your friend as in the example.

For example:

P₁: It's a quarter past 3. What are you doing?

P₂: I am cleaning my room.

It's 5 o'clock. What are you doing?

P₁: ...

c) Ask your friend if he/she remembers what you usually do in the morning (after classes, at half past 4, etc.).

For example:

P₁: Do you remember what I usually do at half past 4?

P₂: As far as I've understood, you usually have some free time at half past 4. Am I right?

P₁: Yes, you are.

5. Speaking skills. Read the information and talk about food you usually eat. Five pupils are the experts-*dietitians*¹. They comment on your reports.

Food for Thought²

- To eat much fat is bad for our health. But there are different kinds of fat. Some of them are bad for us. They are found in red meat, butter and cheese. Useful fats are in foods like nuts, olives, fish.
- Fresh vegetables and fruit are very useful for our health because they contain many vitamins and minerals. For example, carrots are good for your eyes.
- Eat different food, it is the best way to get all the vitamins and minerals you need each day. Fresh fruits and vegetables, whole grains, low-fat dairy products, lean meat, fish, eggs and poultry are the best for your health.
- It's OK to eat food like potato chips, pastries and pasties once in a while, but don't overdo! It is not very healthy.
- A glass of milk is a good source of vitamin D and the minerals calcium, phosphorous and others.
- You can also match your tastes with healthy food: vegetable pizzas, sandwiches with lean slices of meat, fresh salads and baked potatoes.
- Eat less sugar and salt.

¹ дієтолог

² інформація для роздумів

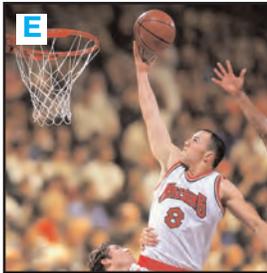
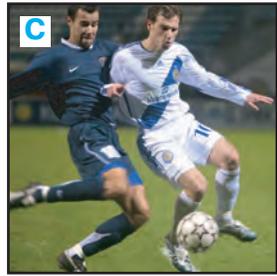
For example:

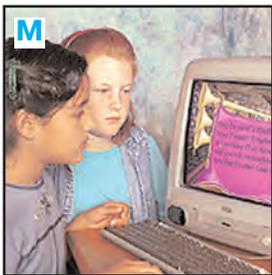
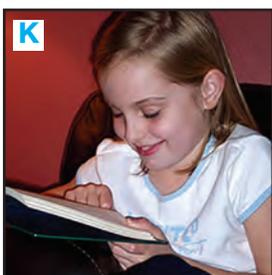
P₁: I usually have a cup of tea and a sandwich with some sausage and cheese for breakfast.

Dietitian: Tea is good for our health. But if there is much sugar in it, it is not very good. Try to eat less sugar. Sausage and cheese are not very useful for our health, either. They contain bad fat. It is better to prepare a sandwich with some lean meat and slices of a cucumber or a tomato. Don't forget about fresh fruit! Eat an apple in the morning. As a proverb says, "An apple a day keeps doctors away".

6. a) Look at the photos and say one by one what people are doing in them.

b) Say what you would like to do. Can you do it well? Say what you can (cannot) do today? Why?





7. Read proverbs and sayings given below and say what you should do to be healthy and happy. Are you an optimist or a pessimist? Write a report “A Happy Life”. Use one of the sayings in your report .

Optimist is someone who always believes that good things will happen. **Pessimist** is someone who always expects that the worst thing will happen.

Taken from Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English

<i>Believe that life is worth living and your belief will help create the fact.</i> James	Повір, що життя варте того, щоб жити, і твоя віра допоможе тобі зробити це реальним. Джеймс
<i>If life gives you a lemon, make lemonade.</i> A proverb	Якщо життя дає тобі лимон, зроби лимонад. Прислів'я
<i>Remember this, – that very little is needed to make a happy life.</i> Aurelius	Запам'ятай: потрібно дуже мало, щоб зробити життя щасливим. Аврелій
<i>The grand essentials of happiness are: something to do, something to love and something to hope for.</i> Chalmers	Основні складові щастя - це щось робити, щось любити і на щось сподіватись. Челмер
<i>The best way to cheer yourself up is to try to cheer somebody else up.</i> Twain	Найкращий спосіб розвеселитися – розвеселити когось ще. Твен

8. Play a game “My favourite kind of sport”.

Work in groups. One pupil says words about his/her favourite kind of sport (for example, a ball, a team, a racket, etc.).

Any classmate of your group can stop the game and name the kind of sports. But if he/she is wrong he/she has to “leave the field” (= may not continue the game).

You can use dictionaries.

Good luck!

II. Grammar Section

'To be going to'

Revision: Indefinite and Continuous Tenses

Vocabulary

a tense – час (*грам.*)

present – теперішній

past – минулий

future – майбутній

indefinite – неозначений

continuous – тривалий

affirmative – стверджувальний

negative – заперечний

interrogative – питальний

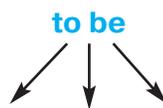
time expression – обставина часу

adverbs of frequency – прислівники частотності

a particle – частка

an adjunct – обставинне слово

1. Read the verse and find the sentences in the Past/Present/Future Indefinite Tenses. Ask general questions to them. Name all the forms of the verb *to be* and make the scheme:



Little Billy was fourteen,
Once he tried a cigarette
(He thought that was great.)
Now he's more than seventeen,
He is green and thin,
His girlfriend thinks that's bad.
She is sad...
What has happened to our Billy?

He became so pale and silly..
Is he tired? Is he ill?
No, he is not, but he will.
Once he met a devil in a pocket,
Then they made a deal.
And Bill still can't pay a bill.
Really? Don't check it!
Written by Kate Smith (14 years old)

2. a) Read the time expressions and the adverbs of frequency. Say what tense forms they are used in.

Time Expressions

today

yesterday

the day before yesterday

tomorrow

the day after tomorrow

now

soon

early

late

then

before

after

Adverbs of Frequency

never

seldom

sometimes

usually

often

ever

b) Complete the interrogative sentences with the time expressions and answer the questions. Say what tenses the sentences are used in.

- 1) What are you doing ...?
- 2) What did you do ...?
- 3) Where did you go ...?
- 4) What will you do ... classes ...?
- 5) Where will you go ... supper ...?
- 6) How many lessons will you have ...?
- 7) Do you get up ...?
- 8) Do you go to bed ...?
- 9) Will you go to the gym ...?
- 10) You'll come back home at 2 o'clock. What will you do ...?

c) Complete the sentences with the adverbs of frequency.

- 1) I ... got up at 9 o'clock on summer holidays.
- 2) I ... do my morning exercises before breakfast.
- 3) I ... go jogging on Sundays.
- 4) I ... go shopping after classes to the department store.
- 5) ... I stayed late at school after my classes last year.
- 6) I ... watch news on TV.
- 7) Have you ... rooted for your favourite team on the stadium?

3. Complete the tables given below and tell your teacher about Indefinite and Continuous Tenses:

- when we use them (what action they express);
- how we form the affirmative/interrogative/negative forms;
- what adjuncts we use with them.

Indefinite Tenses

Tense	Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative	Adjuncts
Present Indefinite	We go to school.	I don't go to school.		always
	He goes to school.	...	...	...
Past Indefinite	...	...	...	...
Future Indefinite	...	...	...	...

Continuous Tenses

Tense	Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative	Adjuncts
Present Continuous
Past Continuous
Future Continuous

Pay attention!

Read the verbs which are not used in Continuous Tenses: **to be, to have, to consist, to contain; to see, to hear, to smell; to want, to wish, to love, to like, to hate, to agree; to know, to believe, to remember, to understand.**

Make some sentences with them.

4. a) Read the sentences and translate them into Ukrainian.

The Present Continuous Tense

(expressing a future action)

to be going to do smth

**to plan to do smth
in the future**

I **am going to visit** my grandmother tomorrow.

I **am going to take part** in the competition.

Mary **is going to ring** us from the station.

He **is going to be a teacher.** (He is a student of the Pedagogical University now.)

We **are going to play basketball** at the weekend.

**when you think (or are sure
smth will happen in the future**

Do you think it **is going to rain**?

He **is going to be a good doctor.** (I am sure because he likes this profession and studies hard.)

I think they **are going to stay in London.** (I think so because it is non-flying weather today and planes cannot fly.)

You **are going to get wet.** (I think so because you haven't got an umbrella and it is going to rain.)

BUT! You cannot say: **I am going to go/to come/to leave**
(and other **verbs of moving**).

Are you **coming** tomorrow evening? – I think, I am.

Are you **leaving** tonight? – We **are flying** to Paris **in the morning**.

Where **are** you **going** the day after tomorrow? – We **are going** to the park.

When **are** they **coming back**? – They **are coming back** in two days. It's two o'clock. The train **is starting** soon.

b) Say what you are going to do after classes (tonight, etc.). Use the time expressions given below.

tonight (this evening)	in a week
tomorrow	in a month
the day after tomorrow	next week
tomorrow morning	next year
tomorrow evening	soon
in two (three, four) days	one of these days (днями)

c) Paraphrase the following sentences in the Future Indefinite Tense using the Present Continuous Tense.

- 1) Ihor will spend his autumn holidays at his grandmother's.
- 2) The students will go to Uman tomorrow. They will visit the Sophia's park.
- 3) We'll learn Economics next year.
- 4) My elder sister will be married soon. They will fly to France for their honey-moon.
- 5) The schoolchildren will decorate their classroom for the flower party.
- 6) My uncle will visit us. He will come in two days.
- 7) I will write the letter to my brother tonight.
- 8) It's cold. Put a hat on. You will fall ill.
- 9) I think it will snow. We shall ski in the forest tomorrow evening.
- 10) I shall talk German two days a week and English one day a week.

5. a) Read and act out the dialogue.

- Ben, what are you looking for?
- Oh, Mum! Where is my hockey stick? We are going to play hockey in the yard.
- Ben, your brother is cleaning the flat. You should help him. Mop the floor.
- Oh, no! I did it yesterday! It's Sunday! My friends are waiting for me! Let Kate help him. What is she doing?
- Your sister is doing her homework. All of us are working. Dad is repairing our car in the garage. I am preparing dinner. You know

uncle Bob and aunt Judith are coming tonight. Shame on you, Ben! We need your help!

- OK. Ugh! I hate mopping the floor!
- Business before pleasure, Ben.

b) Write a dialogue “A Telephone Conversation”: your grandfather is calling you. Tell him what the members of your family are doing and what you are going to do.

6. Work in pairs. Make up and act out the dialogues using the tables given below.

P₁: Would you like	to play chess	tonight
Are you going	to play basketball	this evening
	to play on computer	today
	to watch TV	tomorrow evening
	to drink some coffee	one of these days
	to eat some pizza	next week
	to go to the cinema	
	to go to the theatre	
	to go to the disco	
	to go to the concert	
	to go shopping	
	to go skating	

P₂: No, I wouldn't.
No, I'm not.

P₁: Why not?

P₁: Because I	haven't enough time.
	haven't enough money.
	am tired.
	don't like it.
	hate doing it.
	am not interested in it.
	have a boyfriend/girlfriend.
	will be busy.
	am going to Kyiv soon.

7. Speaking skills. Imagine that it is 2050.

a) Tell your grandchildren about your life (free time, daily routine, school life, etc.) when you were young as in the example.

For example:

I am sixty-five and I don't go in for one kind of sports or another, but when I was a girl I used to be fond of sports and used to play different games. Of all outdoor games I preferred basketball. I can't say I was a very good player, but I was a member of our school team. There were a great many sportsmen among my friends. They used to go to the tennis courts to play. I did not play tennis myself, but I was a tennis fan and if I had any time to spare I used to go to watch the tennis tournaments. Now I don't go to the tennis courts or stadiums any more, but I often watch football matches or figure skating competitions on TV. I think figure skating is the most beautiful kind of sport and I enjoy watching it.

Compare:

I **used to go** to the disco **five years ago**. | **Nowadays** I **don't go** to the disco.

She **used to play chess** with her cousin **last year**. | **This year** she **doesn't play chess** with her cousin because she left for the USA.

I **went to root** for Dynamo to the stadium **three years ago**. | **Nowadays** I **go to root** for Dynamo to the stadium, **too**.

He **played football** every day last year. | He **plays football** every day **this year, too**.

b) Talk about your future life in 2029. How will you spend your free time?

For example:

I am going to be a surgeon. I think I will work in a hospital. I will be married. I will have a wife and two children. I think we will often spend our free time together. We will go ...

8. Listening.

a) Listen to the text "About Mike".

b) Answer the questions.

If you see the icon choose the correct item A, B, C or D.

If you see the icon say if the sentences are true or false.

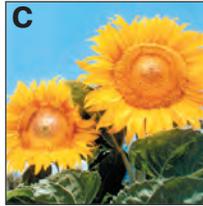
c) Retell the text.

Where does Mike live?



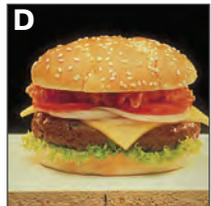
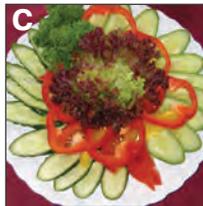
Mike is sixteen years old, isn't he?

Which season was the boy born in?



Mike eats only vegetables, bread, fruit, doesn't he? He does not eat meat or fish, does he?

What is his favourite dish?



Mike is fond of extreme sports, isn't he?

What is his favourite kind of sport?



Mike's favourite subjects are English and Computer Studies, aren't they?

III. Oral Practice

1. Speaking skills. Say if you like to watch films, plays, sport matches, where you prefer to watch them and why. Use the words given below:

- a DVD-player, DVD-disc;
- a computer;
- the theatre, the cinema, the stadium;
- a TV set, television;
- TV-channels;
- satellite broadcasting;
- to see all details;
- a good video/audio quality;
- to vary your leisure time;
- to reproduce the feeling that an event or place gives you.



Once upon a time you had a free evening...

2. Work in pairs. Make up and act out the dialogue “Invitation by telephone”. Agree upon the place and the time. Use the following sentences:

What do you say to going to ...?

I would like to invite you to ...

Would you like to go to ... ?

With pleasure.

That's fine.

Not a bad idea.

What time is it now?

My watch is slow (fast).

Where (when) can we meet?

Let's say

–at about six.

–at six sharp.

–at six thirty.

(at half past six)

Is that time convenient?

I think so.

Як ти ставишся до того, щоб піти ... ?

Я хотів би запросити тебе ...

Чи не бажаєш піти ... ?

Із задоволенням.

Чудово.

Непогана думка.

Котра година зараз?

Мій годинник відстає (поспішає).

Де (коли) ми зустрінёмось?

Скажімо...

– близько шостої.

– рівно о шостій.

– у шість тридцять.

(о пів на сьому)

Цей час влаштовує?

Думаю, так.

It is early.
 It is (too) late.
 Sorry, I will be busy then.
 Let's meet at
 That's all right with me.
 Agreed? - Fine. Of course.
 I'll be on time.
 Don't be late!
 Don't worry.
 I hate being late.

Це рано.
 Це (дуже) пізно.
 Вибач, я зайнятий у цей час.
 Давай зустрінемося ...
 Це мене влаштовує.
 Домовились? – Звичайно.
 Буду вчасно.
 Не спізнюйся!
 Не хвилюйся.
 Ненавиджу спізнюватись.

Eat to please yourself but dress to please others (Franklin)

3. a) Match pictures with clothes. Which of them can you dress for the theatre (the cinema, the Zoo, the picnic, a restaurant, a stadium, work). Can you remember any more items of clothes?

1 	2 	3 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – an evening dress; – high-heeled shoes; – running shoes; – a suit; – trousers; – a shirt; – a skirt; – a blouse; – a tie; – jeans; – a tracksuit; – a sweater; – a jacket; – shoes.
4 	5 	6 	
7 	8 	9 	
10 	11 	12 	
13 	14 		

b) Read and act out the dialogue.

- Mark has invited me to the theatre! We are going to the Globe. What can I dress for it?
- The best choice is an evening dress.
- Oh! I hate wearing dresses.
- And what do you like to wear?
- Jeans and sweaters.
- No! It's not right for theatre. Something else?
- Well. Trousers and blouses.
- OK. You can put your tracksuit, but I think the evening dress will be much better.
- You are joking. Well. You are right. I have got two evening dresses. Which one? Black or blue?
- Try both ones on!
- Oh! You are a real fashion star! Both dresses are nice. But I should dress this one. The dress fits perfectly. And black colour suits you.
- Well! The choice is done!

c) Imagine that you are going to the theatre (the cinema, a sport club, the picnic, etc.). Make up and act out the dialogue "Choosing clothes".

The real character of a man is found out by his amusements (*Reynolds*)

- 4.** a) Read the dialogues and work in pairs to act them out.
- Andriy! Would you like to see a film?
 - What's on today?
 - "Terminator IV".
 - Oh! Is it a super-film?
 - Yes, it is. I have seen the three first parts.
 - Did you like the film?
 - It is great! What impressive trick effects!
 - And who's starring in this film?
 - Didn't you really know? Oh! Arnold Schwarzenegger!
 - At what cinema is the film on?
 - It's on at the "Kotliarevsky" cinema. Do you want to go?
 - Of course. As you say it is worth seeing.
-
- Excuse me. How can I get to the balcony?
 - Go straight ahead and turn to the left.
 - Thank you. I would like a play-bill, please.

- Take it, please.
- How much is it?
- The price is forty cents.
- Here you are.
- Thank you.
- Could you tell me how many acts there are in the play?
- There are two acts in the play.
- How long does the interval last?
- Twenty minutes.

b) Work in groups. Make up and act out some polylogues “A Free Evening” using the sentences given below.

What shall we do tonight?

Where would you like to go?

- to the cinema;
- to the theatre;
- to the concert.

And what about going to ... ?

How long will it take us to get there?

Let's go there at once.

What is on today at ... ?

Let's go over to the bill-board and see what's on.

Have you seen ... ?

Is it worth seeing?

Who is the screenplay written by?

It is the film version of ... by

Can we get tickets?

When does the performance (show, concert) begin (end)?

In the box office:

What would you recommend me to see?

When does the afternoon (evening) show begin?

When does the next show/film start?

Do you have tickets for ... ?

Як нам провести вечір?

Куди б ви хотіли піти?

- в кіно;
- в театр;
- на концерт.

А як щодо того, щоб піти у ... ?

Скільки потрібно часу, щоб дістатися туди?

Вирушаймо негайно.

Що сьогодні йде в ... ?

Давайте підемо до афіши і подивимося, що йде.

Ви бачили ... ?

Це варто подивитись?

Хто автор сценарію?

Це екранізація (книги ... автора).

Ми зможемо дістати білети?

Коли починається (закінчується) вистава (шоу, показ, концерт)?

У касі:

Що ви мені порадите подивитись?

Коли починається денна (вечірня) вистава?

Коли починається наступна вистава/показ фільму?

У вас є білети на ... ?

One ticket, please, for the next showing.

I would like seats ...

- in the centre of the hall
- a little closer to the front
- a little further back
- in the middle block

How much is it?/How much are they?

Will the curtain go up soon?

Did you like the film (show, concert)?

I liked (didn't like) the acting.

Oh! The concert was a great success! It was excellent.

Один білет на наступний сеанс, будь ласка.

Я хотів би місця

- у центрі зали
- трохи ближче
- подалі
- у середньому ряду

Скільки він/вони коштує (кошують)?

Скоро розпочнеться вистава?

Вам сподобався фільм (вистава, концерт)?

Мені (не) сподобалась гра акторів.

О! Концерт мав велечезний успіх. Він був чудовий.

**Tell me what you eat
and I will tell you what you are (Brillat-Savarin)**

5. a) Read and act out the dialogue “In McDonald’s”.

- How do you do?
- How do you do?
- What would you like to order?
- Cheeseburger, please.
- Would you like any drink?
- Small Coke, please. What do you have for dessert?
- Milkshake and apple pie.
- Well. I'd love to have some.
- Anything else?
- It's enough, thank you.



b) Work in groups. Make up and act out the polylogue “In the restaurant”. One pupil is a waiter, the others are customers. Use the following sentences:

May we have the menu?

We are not ready to order yet.

Please, bring one more chair (napkin, spoon, fork, knife).

Дайте меню, будь ласка.

Ми ще не готові замовити.

Будь ласка, принесіть ще один стілець (серветку, ложку, виделку, ніж).

What could you recommend ...

- for a cold (hot) appetizer?
- for meat (fish) dishes?
- for dessert?

What ... do you have?

- special dishes
- vegetables
- salads
- fruits

We would like ...

For the first course give us ...

For the main dish bring us ...

With the main dish, please, bring us ...

Would you like some ... ?

Help yourself to ...

Have some more ...

How much do we owe you?

Що ви порадите ...

- з холодних (гарячих) закусок;
- з м'ясних (рибних) страв;
- на десерт?

Які у вас є ...

- фірмові страви;
- овочі;
- салати;
- фрукти?

Ми б хотіли ...

На перше дайте нам ...

На друге принесіть нам ...

З другим (з м'ясним) принесіть нам, будь ласка, ...

Чи не бажаєте ... ?

Беріть (пригощайтесь) ...

Чи не бажаєте ще ... ?

Що ми вам винні?

- 6.** Tell your friends about your last visit to the theatre (or the cinema). Ask your teacher to help you if you don't know some words: **I am sorry, I don't know how to say this in English ...; What is the English for ... ?**

For example:

P₁: May I tell you about my last visit to the theatre. I cannot help telling about it! I'll never forget my first visit to the Bolshoi Theatre in Moscow. It was five years ago during my visit to our relatives. My mother bought three tickets for the ballet "The Sleeping Beauty" by Tchaikovsky beforehand. We came to the theatre long before the performance began. It was performed the first time after a long break and there were a lot of people asking if we had an extra ticket. We left our coats in the cloakroom and bought a play-bill. At eight sharp the lights went down and the performance began. I had never seen anything more wonderful! The dancing was excellent. When the curtain fell, all spectators stood up applauding. The dancers were presented with flowers. The performance was a great success with public. My first visit to the theatre is one of my brightest memories about Moscow.

7. Project work “My classmates”.

- 1) Make a wall-newspaper about your classmates' hobbies. Divide into groups of interests (music, sports, art, collecting, literature). Write an essay about your hobby. Add some photos or pictures.
- 2) Prepare a concert “Presentation of my class” for an English week. Put on exhibition of your classmates' pictures and photos. Say a few words about them. Prepare some items for a concert: dancing, reciting an English verse, singing an English song, etc.

IV. Reading

1. Answer the questions given below:

- 1) What is your favourite kind of sports?
- 2) Do you go in for sport?
- 3) Are you fond of music?
- 4) Who is your favourite singer?
- 5) Do you play any musical instrument?
- 6) Have you got any collections at home?
- 7) Are you a cinema-goer?
- 8) Are you a great theatre-goer?
- 9) Have you got a pet?
- 10) Do you like computer games?

2. Read the text and say what it deals with.

Tastes differ

A hundred years ago there was no problem of what working people could do with their spare time. Their hours of work were so long that they had hardly any leisure. Nowadays it's even hard to name all the activities, entertainments and hobbies run by people in their free time. A growing number of people prefer watching films, performances, sporting events on TV to attending them. There exists quite a different sort of leisure activities, betting and gambling for example, which give thousands of people hope for a huge prize and a sense of excitement and expectation. There are various pursuits that people choose to pass away their free time. Nowadays people spend hours watching different informational, educational or environment programmes. Other

popular occupations are listening to the radio, reading books, painting and so on. Many people prefer to go in for different kinds of sports and lead an active way of life. Sometimes they participate in competitions or contests and have a very good pastime. There are people that prefer a calm way of spending their free time. They are fond of quiet rambles or walks in parks or gardens. More serious people prefer to visit museums, art galleries or theatres. Aerobics and shopping are two of the most popular pursuits for women. Cooking is also very widespread activity among them. But nothing can be compared with the feeling of those who are really interested in some field of activity, which has become something favourite and admired.

A “hobby” is a special interest or activity that you do in your free time. Hobbies differ like tastes. If you have chosen a hobby according to your character and taste - you are lucky because your life becomes more interesting. Hobbies are divided into four large classes: doing things, making things, collecting things and learning things.

The most popular of all hobby groups is doing things. It includes a wide variety of activities, everything from gardening to travelling and from chess to volleyball. Gardening is one of the oldest man’s hobbies. It is a well-known fact that the English are very fond of gardening and growing flowers, especially roses. Both grown-ups and children are fond of playing different computer games. This is a relatively new hobby but it is becoming more and more popular. Some people have animals as hobbies. They keep rabbits or go fishing. They train dogs to do tricks or keep horses to race and carry messages.

Making things includes drawing, painting, making sculpture, designing costumes, handicrafts and others. Two of the most famous hobby painters were President Eisenhower and Sir Winston Churchill. Some hobbyists write music or play musical instruments. One of the American Presidents Bill Clinton, for example, plays the saxophone.

Almost everyone collects something at some period in his life: stamps, coins, matchboxes, books, records, postcards, toys, watches and other things. Some collections have not real value. Others become so large and so valuable that they are housed in museums and art galleries. Many world famous collections started in a small way with one or two items. People with a good deal of money often collect paintings, rare books and other art objects. Often such private collections are given to museums, libraries and public galleries so others might take pleasure in seeing them.

No matter what kind of hobby a person has, he always has the opportunity of learning from it. By reading about the things he is interested in, he is adding to what he knows.

Learning things can be the most exciting aspect of a hobby. So we think that everyone should have a hobby, it is like the target of your life.



3. Choose the correct item A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

- 1) If people prefer a calm way of spending their free time, they ____ .
A. participate in competitions or contests
B. are usually fond of betting and gambling
C. ramble or walk in parks or gardens with great pleasure
D. like aerobics and shopping as a rule
- 2) A “hobby” is a special interest or activity that you do ____ .
A. in you free time
B. in your working time
C. during your vacation
D. at the week-end
- 3) The most popular of all hobby groups is ____ .
A. making things
B. doing things
C. collecting things
D. earning things
- 4) Gardening is one of the ____ man’s hobbies.
A. most popular
B. rarest
C. youngest
D. oldest
- 5) No matter what kind of hobby a person has, he always has the opportunity of ____ .
A. getting much money
B. learning from it
C. benefiting from it
D. getting out of bad habits

4. Say if the following sentences are true (T) or false (F).

- 1) A hundred years ago there was a great problem of what working people could do with their spare time.
- 2) Nowadays it’s even hard to name all the activities, entertainments and hobbies run by people in their free time.
- 3) Aerobics and shopping are two of the most popular pursuits for boys and girls.

- 4) Cooking is a very widespread activity among women.
- 5) Hobbies are divided into four large classes: doing things, making things, collecting things and learning things.
- 6) Both grown-ups and children are fond of playing different computer games.
- 7) One of the American Presidents Bill Clinton plays the trumpet.
- 8) Each collection has a real value.
- 9) By reading about the things you are interested in, you are adding to what you know.
- 10) Everyone has a hobby, it is like the target of his life.

5. Retell the text using the sentences given below.

I have read the text under the title The text is about ... (It deals with ...) It is (isn't) interesting. I (don't) like it because ... I have learnt that ... It was interesting to learn ... I didn't know that ...

6. Speaking skills. Talk about your hobbies.

7. Write an essay about your hobbies.

V. Writing

1. a) Work in pairs: dictate and write down the words that you've learnt during your previous lessons. Make up sentences with them. If you don't know how to write the word, ask your friend to spell it.

b) Write an essay (not more than 16 sentences) about your hobbies or free time and dictate it to your friend.

2. Write the sentences filling in the blanks with the right form of the verb in the brackets. Say what tenses the sentences are used in.

1. My grandpa ... (to play tennis) forty years ago, but now he ... (to prefer) watching tennis matches on TV. 2. I ... (to be an interpreter) in the future therefore I ... (to study) English hard every day. 3. My uncle ... (to have) three children. 4. ... (to take) an umbrella, it ... (to rain) soon. 5. My sister ... (to do her homework) now, she (to translate) the text at the present moment. 6. When I ... (to come home) yesterday, my mum ... (to cook) an apple cake. 7. Many pupils of our group ... (to go in for sport) because they ... (to want) to be healthy and strong.

8. My elder brother ... (to be) lazy therefore he seldom ... (to go jogging).
9. We ... (to see) girls and boys in the picture, they ... (to ski, to skate and to play snowballs). 10. The students ... (to go) to the disco tonight. 11. I ... (to take part) in the sports competitions the day after tomorrow. 12. Her pen friend ... (to come) one of these days, he ... (to live) in Poltava next year.

3. Make negative and interrogative sentences . Write general and special questions. Say what tenses the sentences are used in.

1. My mother often skated on a lake near our house in winter in the childhood. 2. The children were working on computer at five o'clock yesterday. 3. Tom is playing football with his friend in the yard now. 4. I usually go jogging to the park every morning. 5. My elder brother goes in for parachute jumping. 6. They are coming from London in two days. 7. I am going to fish in the river next day. 8. I'll often see my grandparents next year because we are going to move into new house. 9. The pupils will be writing a dictation at ten o'clock tomorrow morning. 10. We shall go to the swimming-pool next month.

4. Change the following sentences into the Past, Future, Present or Continuous Tense.

1. I play tennis with my friend on the tennis-court every evening.
2. Maksym is reading a book about English sportsmen in the sitting-room at the present moment. 3. Do you often watch sports programmes on TV? 4. They don't go to the Zoo this year. 5. We are writing letters to our pen friends from Great Britain at our English lesson now.

5. Work in pairs. Write and act out the dialogue "In My Free Time" (invitation by telephone, choosing dress for an event, about plans for a free evening, in the restaurant, in the box office, talking about the concert/film/show, etc.)

6. Writing a daily routine. Write your daily routine and talk to your friends about your working days and the days off.

For example:

7.00 I get up, wash myself, brush my teeth and take a shower.

7.20 I do my morning exercises.

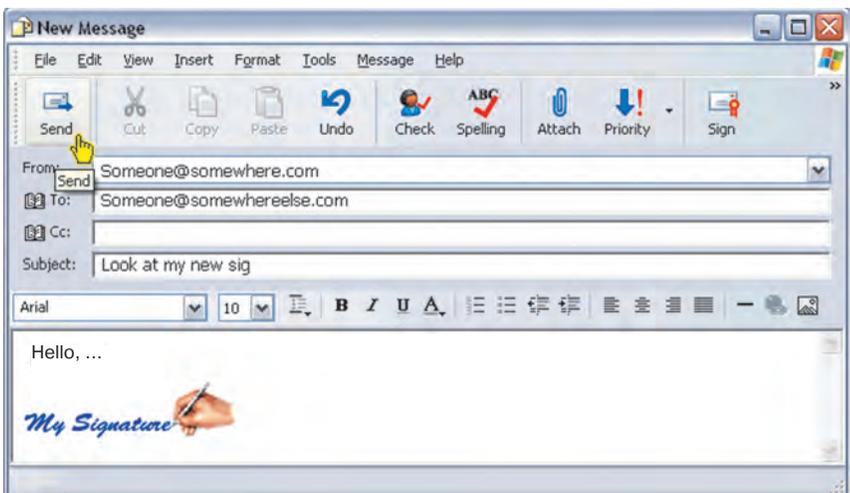
7.35...

7. Internet Skills. Answer the questions and tell the rules of writing e-mail letters.

- 1) How should you address the person if you are writing to someone, you don't know?
a) *Dear Mr/Mrs/Ms X*; b) *How do you do?* c) *Hello, people!*
- 2) What should you finish your message with?
a) *Good-bye!* b) *Yours sincerely*; c) *Best regards.*
- 3) Can you start your letter with *Hi* or *Hello*, if you are writing to a friend?
- 4) Which actions do these icons allow you? Match icons with actions:

<i>Icon</i>	<i>What It Allows</i>
Inbox Message	to open the window to compose a new message
Compose Message	to read new messages
Reply to Author	to write a reply to all of the people that received the message earlier
Reply to All	to send a message you have received to another person
Forward Message	to send an answer to a message you have received

- 5) Where should you write an e-mail address of the person you are writing the letter?
a) after the word **To**; b) after the word **Cc**; c) after the word **Subject**.



- 6) After which word should you write the key words that describe the message you are sending?
- 7) Which icon allows you to include a file (a photo, a Word-document, etc.) with your message?
a) “Attach”; b) “Paste”; c) “Copy”; d) “Send”; e) “Undo”.
- 8) Which icon should you click on to send your message?
- 9) Have you got your own e-mail box? Which system do you use?
 - 1) mail.google.com
 - 2) mail.ru
 - 3) rumbler.ru
 - 4) ukr.net
8. Write an e-mail letter to your pen friend about your free time.

For example:

Hi, John!

Thank you for your letter.

I want to tell you about my free time and leisure as you asked me about it. ...

VI. Time for Fun

1. Work in groups. Read the information and create your own Mini-Quest (within your school).

Quest¹ is an adventure game. The players solve various puzzles and find various artifacts.

The earliest adventure games were textual, then a hybrid of pictures with text, then a “point-n-click” game, where you find the right answer to the question and click on it. Now it is a very popular computer game. For example, “*Runaway: a Road Adventure*”, “*Black Mirror*”, “*Still Life*”, “*Fahrenheit*”, “*Sam&Max Episodes*”, etc.

Recently, Quest has become also a very popular TV-show. It is an extreme-intellectual game which is played in the street. Several teams play against each other.

The players of Quest are energetic, clever and cheerful persons, who enjoy adventures.

¹ поиск пригод

They do different tasks. Players move from one point of the town to another where the agent gives them the next task. If they did the task incorrectly, they cannot find the place they need.

For example:

Alexander heard this story from the family of General Raievsky while travelling around the Caucasus and Crimea in 1820. He was going to the Bahchisaray Palace at that time. There he heard a tragic legend about a young and very beautiful Polish Princess called Mariya Pototskaya. She was stolen and brought to Khan Mengly-Gereyev. The Khan fell in love with the girl, but she didn't even want to see him. He **pressed for her love**, but Mariya didn't return his feelings. She lived in the harem under the name of Dylyarih-Beekesh. One night she was caught by Zarema – the Khan's first wife. Zarema, **sank Maria** in the swimming-pool. Khan killed Zarema. Mariya's death depressed the Khan so much that he ordered to built a beautiful monument to her. Since then the Khan's tears streamed there day and night.

This story touched Alexander's heart very much and he wrote a poem. Now he is waiting for you to recite it.

The answer: This story is about Alexander Pushkin and his poem "The Bahchisaray Fountain". So the Quest agent is waiting for the players near the fountain in Pushkin Street.

2. Read the jokes and act out the one that you like.

A producer was present at a performance. He seemed to be highly pleased with it. When the performance was over, he began to applaud. "Mister Black! Are you applauding the most to the leading lady or the leading man?" his neighbour asked him. "Neither the one nor the other, but the prompter", replied the producer, "It was him that I heard most during the performance".

During the performance a young couple whispered to each other. The man next to them was angry.

"Excuse me," he said, "but I can't hear any word!"

"I like that," said the young man. "It's no business of yours, sir, what I am telling my wife."

Jim's uncle took him to the cinema. The boy had never gone to the cinema before. It was dark when they went in. After ten minutes the uncle asked the boy: "Are you enjoying the film?" Jim answered: "Yes, but the seat is very uncomfortable. I can't sit on it." The uncle looked and said: "You'll be comfortable if you turn the seat down."

A young girl was an actress of one of the Hollywood thrillers. There was a place in the film where this girl had to jump from a high mountain into the water. When the young actress saw the place, she went to the producer and said: "I won't jump. There is only a foot of water at the bottom of the hill!" "That's all right," said the producer. "Do you think we want you to get drowned?"

HOMWORK

1. Complete the sentence:
I want to be healthy therefore ...
2. Write an essay about your spare time (your hobbies, favourite activities, etc.).
3. Make a poster "Bad Habits". Prepare a report about smoking, drinking or taking drugs.
4. Find 15 sentences in the Present, Past, Future Indefinite or Continuous Tenses in a newspaper (English version).
5. Find the information about your favourite actor or sportsman in Internet and make a poster about him/her. We advise you to use Google. Come to www.google.com.ua and write the name of your favourite singer in the line "**Search**", then click "**Google Search**".
6. Answer the questions and write an essay about your last visit to the theatre.
 - 1) Are you a great theatre-goer?
 - 2) When was the last time you were at the theatre?
 - 3) What theatre did you go?
 - 4) What was on?
 - 5) What actor (actress, singer, dancer) did you like most of all?
 - 6) What did the play deal with?
 - 7) How many acts did the play consist of?
 - 8) When did the play begin?
 - 9) When was it over?
 - 10) Is it worth seeing?

7. Write what you are going to do tonight, tomorrow, after classes, etc. Use the time expressions on page 35.
8. Write a letter to your pen friend, invite him/her to your native place and tell him/her how you can spend your free time.
9. Project work. Write a play of any Ukrainian fairy tale in English. Co-operate to make the best variant of this play.
10. Make up a scheme “Hobbies” and tell your friends about them.

Home Reading

1. Read the text and look up new words in a dictionary.

Theatres in Great Britain

There are many state theatres in Ukraine, which have a permanent staff. Each of them has a great variety of shows. In Great Britain it is not like that. A play is rehearsed for a few weeks by a company of actors working together mostly for the first time and it is then allowed to run as long as it draws the audience and pays its way – which may be for several years.

Another peculiarity of the theatre in Great Britain is as follows: there are two kinds of seats: bookable seats – seats, that can be booked in advance and unbookable ones – those, which have no numbers and the spectators occupy them on the principle of first come, first served. There are different parts of the theatre in England. All the front rows, as far as the barrier, are the stalls. The barrier separates the stalls from the other part of the house. There are separate entrances for different parts of the theatre. The pit is the part behind the barrier. The seats there are not bookable and have no numbers. You have to stand in a queue to get in there and also for the gallery. The lower tier under the gallery is the dress-circle. People having seats there as well as in the stalls are supposed to wear some sort of evening dress.

During the Middle Ages plays were acted inside churches and later in the market-places of towns.

The first theatre in England, the Blackfriars Theatre, was built in 1576 and the Globe, which is closely connected with Shakespeare, in 1599.

The theatres of that time were nothing like the comfortable places we visit today. They were rather rounded in shape, as a rule, open to the sky, without a roof, so that it must have been very unpleasant when it rained. The rich people had seats in raised balconies facing and along sides of the stage, the poor people stood in the pit in front. They ate fruit and sweets, smoked long pipes and laughed very much if the plays were funny.

The stage itself was a raised wooden platform with no scenery. When the actors wanted to show the district in which a scene took place they simply put up a placard with the description of the district.

There were no actresses at that time and boys, who were trained for this purpose, acted instead of women.

Nowadays the most famous theatre in Great Britain is the Opera-House in London. It is situated inside the fruit, flower and vegetable market called Covent Garden. Isn't it strange!

The first Covent Garden Theatre was built in 1792. It was a theatre of drama. This historic theatre was burned down in 1808 and rebuilt exactly a year after – in 1809. It opened its season with Shakespeare's "Macbeth" but soon became exclusively an opera-house. In 1856 a fire broke out again in the hall and in a few hours the building was in ruins. Two years later it was again rebuilt.

There are seats for 2,000 persons and though this theatre is rather big it looks very cosy. In the corridors the wallpaper is striped and one can see pink settees and pink-shaded lamps everywhere.

The second well-known English theatre is the English National Theatre. It is working temporarily in the Old Vic Theatre. This is the first state theatre Britain has ever had. It has a permanent staff of actors and actresses.

In the past few years London has become the centre of theatrical experiment. In 1964 Peter Brook and Charles Morowitz formed an experimental group attached to the Royal Shakespeare Company and presented "The Theatre of Cruelty". What's characteristic of this theatre?

Firstly, images have become much more important than words and the actor and the director share the same creative rights as the author. Secondly, there's a readiness to alter or rewrite the classics to see if they can show us anything about present-day problems. Some companies place great importance on physical discipline, others

put the emphasis on freedom of movement. “The Living Theatre” can be an example of this.

The most modern building has the New London Theatre. It was opened in 1973 and has in one complex a restaurant, underground parking for cars, tower blocks for tenants and a theatre. The New London Theatre is modern in design and very comfortable. The scenery can be lowered through lowered panels in the ceiling. Walls, stage, ceiling and even seats can be moved.



The Royal Opera House in London

- 2.** Prepare some questions and tasks for your classmates. Ask them to:
 - a) choose the correct item A, B, C or D to complete the sentences;
 - b) say if the sentences are true or false.
- 3.** Retell the text using the sentences:

I have read the text under the title The text is about ... (It deals with ...) It is (isn't) interesting. I (don't) like it because ... I have learnt that ... It was interesting to learn ... I didn't know that ...
- 4.** Discuss the text in class. Talk about Ukrainian and English theatres.

Check Yourself!

Choose the correct item a, b, c or d.

Complete the sentences.

1. If I want to keep fit I should

- a) eat only vegetables and fruit
- b) go in for basketball and tennis
- c) lead a healthy way of life
- d) read a lot of books

2. My brother goes in ... mountain climbing.

- a) to
- b) on
- c) for
- d) at

3. Many boys and girls are fond of

- a) run
- b) running
- c) runner
- d) runs

4. Ruslan is strong and well-built because he

- a) is fond of playing computer games
- b) likes to play chess
- c) prefers watching sports games
- d) goes in for sports

5. Find the wrong item.

- a) Canoeing is the sport of travelling by sailing boat.
- b) Speleology is the sport of walking and climbing in caves.
- c) Theatre-goer is someone who regularly watches plays at the theatre.
- d) A hobby is an activity that you enjoy doing in your free time.

6. Find the question to the answer.

He usually goes jogging at 8 o'clock every evening.

- a) What does he usually do before classes?
- b) What does he do to keep fit?
- c) What did he do yesterday?
- d) What is he going to do soon?

7. Find the answer to the question.

What kind of extreme sports does Olha like?

- a) She likes reading very much.
- b) She prefers canoeing to other kinds of sports.

- c) She goes in for tennis.
- d) She is fond of singing.

8. Find the correct sentence.

- a) He is going to the theatre tomorrow evening.
- b) He goes to the theatre tomorrow evening.
- c) He will goes to the theatre tomorrow evening.
- d) He is going to go to the theatre tomorrow evening.

9. Find the sentences in the Past Continuous Tense.

- a) We were football fans five years ago.
- b) Tom was rooting for his favourite football team at that time.
- c) The boys are playing football in the yard.
- d) I was tired after the competition.

10. Find the sentence that expresses a future action.

- a) My parents often went to the tennis court ten years ago.
- b) We won the football match the day before yesterday.
- c) Our school basketball team is going to Kyiv one of these days.
- d) I often do my morning exercises outdoors.

11. Choose the correct variant to translate the sentence.

Мій брат займався боксом п'ять років тому, тепер він волейболіст.

- a) My brother went in for boxing five years ago, now he is a volleyball-player.
- b) My brother goes in for boxing five years ago, now he is going for volleyball.
- c) My brother went in for boxing five years ago, now he goes in for volleyball.
- d) My brother used to go in for boxing five years ago, now he is a volleyball-player.

12. Choose the proper sentence.

Your sister takes part in a tennis competition. The first event is starting in a minute. You say to her:

- a) Be a good girl!
- b) Have a good trip!
- c) Good bye!
- d) Good luck!

The keys to the exercises: 1-c, 2-c, 3-b, 4-d, 5-a, 6-b, 7-b, 8-a, 9-b, 10-c, 11-d, 12-d.

UNIT 2 *** BOOKS IN OUR LIFE

I. Language Material

1. a) Listen and repeat the words in the right column.
Pay attention to the correct pronunciation.
b) Read the sentences in the left column. Pay attention to the proper intonation.
c) Answer the questions in the left column.

Many people are fond of reading. Nothing can **replace** books. Books are the **source** of information, knowledge and relaxation. We read for pleasure. But reading we learn.

A lot of us like books and stories about **imaginary** people and events. Some people like **prose (novels, stories, tales)**, the others enjoy reading **poetry (poems)**.

If we want to have information on a certain subject we use **non-fiction**: books about real facts or events, not imagined ones. So there are many kinds of literature. Look at the scheme.

replace [rɪˈpleɪs] замінити
a source [sɔːs] джерело
information [ˌɪnfəˈmeɪʃ(ə)n] інформація

imaginary [ɪˈmædʒɪn(ə)rɪ] вигаданий

prose [ˈprəʊz] проза

a novel [ˈnɒv(ə)l] роман

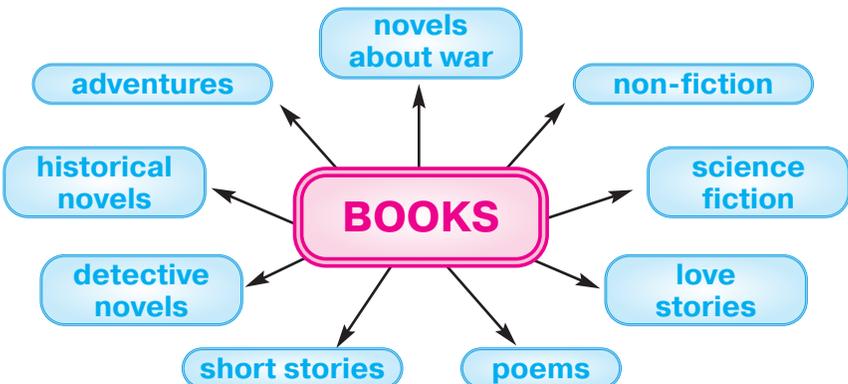
a story [ˈstɔːrɪ] повість, оповідання

a tale [teɪl] казка

poetry [ˈpɔːtri] поезія

a poem [ˈpɔːm] вірш

non-fiction [ˌnɒnˈfɪkʃən] не вигаданий, реальний



Science fiction is a kind of writing which describes **imaginary** future **discoveries** in science and their effect on life. The books of science fiction usually tell about unusual situations which will **probably** never happen.

Love stories are books about happy or unhappy love.

A fairy tale (or a fairy story, a tale) is an **exciting** children's story in which magical things happen.

A short story is a short written story about imaginary situations, that usually contains only a few **characters**.

Detective novels are stories about a **crime** often a **murder** and a **detective** who tries to find out who did it.

Historical novels tell us about different historical events, facts, people that happened/lived in the past.

Adventures are books about **exciting adventurers'** life in which dangerous or unusual things happen.

Do you like reading?

What do you prefer reading?

Each of us has his favourite **writer** or **poet**.

Who is your favourite writer (poet)?

What kinds of literature does he/she write?

To get some facts about any subject we often use **encyclopedias**.

An **encyclopedia** is a book or set of books containing facts about many different subjects or about one **particular** subject.

Do you often use encyclopedias?

When do you use them?

science fiction [ˌsaɪəns'fɪkʃən]

наукова фантастика

a discovery [dɪs'kʌv(ə)rɪ]

відкриття

probably ['prɒb(ə)blɪ]

напевно, мабуть

love stories — романи про кохання

a fairy tale ['feəriːtɛɪl] казка

exciting [ɪk'saɪtɪŋ] захоплюючий

a short story — оповідання

a character ['kærɪktə] літературний герой

(a) detective [dɪ'tektɪv]

детектив, детективний

a crime [kraɪm] злочин

a murder ['mɜːdə] вбивство

an adventure [əd'ventʃə]

пригода; **an adventurer** — шукач пригод

writer ['raɪtə] письменник

poet ['pəʊɪt] поет

an encyclopedia [ɪn,saɪklə'riːdiə] енциклопедія

particular [pə'tɪkjʊlə] окремий, певний

Many books **are made into plays or movies**.

For example, Peter Jackson **made a screen version of a novel** "The Fellowship of the Ring". As you know the novel **is written by** J.R.R. Tolkien. *Do you know any books made into plays or movies?*

Many men and women, boys and girls **all over the world** like theatre and cinema very much.

Theatre includes such **performances** as **plays (tragedies and comedies), ballet, opera, puppet-shows** (or puppet-plays) and others.

Which of them do you like?

*Is there **a drama theatre, an opera house or a puppet-show** in your town/city?*

Many people all over the world are great **cinema-goers**.

There are different **genres** of films. They can be: **dramas, melodramas, musical films, horror films, thrillers, crime stories, westerns, super-films, comedies** and others.

Some people like **serials**.

Are you a great cinema-goer? / Are you a great theatre-goer?

What is your favourite genre of films?

a play [pleɪ] п'єса, вистава
a movie (*AmE*) [ˈmuːvi] кіно
to be made into plays/movies – бути театралізованим/екранізованим
to make a screen version [ˈskriːnˈvɜːʃ(ə)n] **of a novel** – екранізувати роман

all over the world – в усьому світі

a performance [pəˈfɔːmens] вистава

a tragedy [ˈtrædʒɪdi] трагедія

a comedy [ˈkɒmɪdi] комедія

ballet [ˈbæleɪ] балет

a drama [ˈdrɑːmə] **theatre** – драматичний театр

opera [ˈɒp(ə)rə] опера

an opera house – театр опери

a puppet-show [ˈpʌpɪtʃəʊ] ляльковий(а) вистава/театр

a cinema-goer – кіноглядач

a theatre-goer – театрал

a genre [ʒɑːnr] жанр

a melodrama [ˈmeləʊ,drɑːmə] мелодрама

a musical film – музичний фільм

a horror [ˈhɒrə] **film** – фільм жахів

a thriller [ˈθrɪlə] триллер

a crime story – детектив

a western [ˈwestən] вестерн

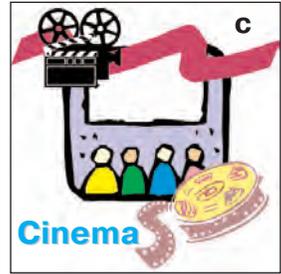
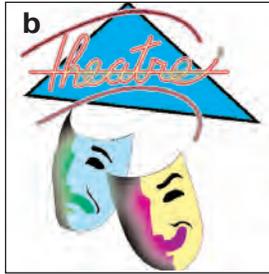
a super-film – бойовик

a comedy – комедія

a serial [ˈsɪəriəl] серіал

2. Listening.

a) Look at the pictures and listen to Bohdan talking about his hobby. Say which picture the boy is talking about.



b) Listen to Bohdan's story again. Write down the words Bohdan uses in his report into your exercise-book.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> to watch | <input type="checkbox"/> a movie | <input type="checkbox"/> a crime story |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a book | <input type="checkbox"/> a film | <input type="checkbox"/> a horror film |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a writer | <input type="checkbox"/> cinema | <input type="checkbox"/> a drama |
| <input type="checkbox"/> poetry | <input type="checkbox"/> theatre | <input type="checkbox"/> an opera |
| <input type="checkbox"/> literature | <input type="checkbox"/> theatre-goer | <input type="checkbox"/> a discovery |

c) Speaking skills. Talk about Bohdan's hobby. Do you like it? What do you prefer: reading books or watching films?

3. a) Read the text and say what it deals with. Do you agree with the girl? Talk about advantages and disadvantages of literature, theatre and cinema.

My name is Olena. I am fond of reading. My mother told me it was a problem to find a good book twenty years ago. People often exchanged interesting books with each other. They took care of their home libraries, were happy of any new good book. Nowadays it's not a problem to get any book you need. Recently many new books have appeared. I mean pocket-books. They are becoming very popular. But in my point of view we cannot consider these books to be works of a real literature.

I like good books, good plays and films. I think each of them has their own advantages. Reading books we have a flight of fancy. Each reader imagines different situations and people (characters). Cinema shows us concrete places and people. Modern special effects work wonders. You can see something you've never seen. You can learn about the clothes, houses, ways of life and living of any era. Close-ups reproduce any thought, any emotion of a character. But watching films we see the new work of art that directors and actors have made.

And we look at the places and people through the eyes of the director and actors. Sometimes they change the content of the book. A good example is “Romeo and Juliet”, which is a Hollywood remake of classic play. I like this book. In the film the action takes place in the modern world but all the rest is just like great Shakespeare had described: people, feelings and even the original text is used in the film. The music is great. But it isn't ‘Shakespeare’. It is an original work of art. Unfortunately, I have not seen this play on the stage. Theatre is closer to book but uses music and has the vivid features of cinema. But it's necessary to say that theatre, with the exception of modern musicals, is not as popular now as it used to be. There are many people who prefer to sit comfortably before the TV set and enjoy themselves without leaving their homes. I don't know if we can call that an advantage of TV films.

And what do you think about advantages and disadvantages of books, plays and movies?

b) Say if you have got a home library (a film collection) at home. Tell your friends about it.

c) Study how many people in your group are fond of reading, watching films and plays. What activity is the most popular? Why? Give you point of view.

For example:

Put your hand up those who likes reading, please.

Ten pupils of our group prefer ...

The most popular activity in our group is ...

I think children like ... more than ... because ...

4. a) Tell your friends about the book you have read recently. Don't say what the title of the book is and whom this book is written by. Your classmates should guess the book on their own. Use the sentences:

I have read an interesting book recently.

It is a novel (a story).

It deals with It is about ...

The action (the events) take(s) place in ... (*where and when*).

The main characters are ...

Let me say a few words about the plot of the book.

The idea of a novel (story) is ...

What is the English for ... ? Help me, please.

For example:

Let me say! I have read a very interesting book recently. It is a novel. It deals with the adventures of two friends. I think it is about friendship and a real life. The events take place in the USA. I don't know exactly but I think the action takes place at the beginning of the 20th century. The main characters are two boys - Tom and Hackleberry. I'd like to add a few words about the plot of the book. The ten-year-old boy Tom lives in America with his aunt. He is an ordinary child. He likes to play and walk. But he doesn't like to work. He has got a homeless friend. The boys want to find a **treasure**¹. While they look for it, many interesting adventures happen to them. In the long run they managed to find the treasure. The book is very interesting. I think the idea is that the main treasure is friendship and life. (*"The Adventures of Tom Sawyer"* by Mark Twain.)

b) Speaking skills. Talk about your favourite book. What kind of literature do you like to read?

5. a) Look at the pictures and match Ukrainian, Russian, English and American writers. Say what books are written by these writers. Do you know any more Ukrainian, Russian, English and American writers and poets?



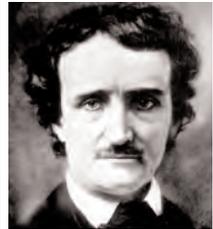
**Taras
Shevchenko**



**Aleksandr
Pushkin**



**William
Shakespeare**



**Edgar Allan
Poe**



**Agatha
Christie**



**Mark
Twain**



**Michail
Lermontov**



**Lesia
Ukrainka**

¹ клад



**Fyodor
Dostoyevsky**



**Theodore
Dreiser**



**Ivan
Franko**



**Daniel
Defoe**

For example:

I would like to say a few words about Ukrainian writers. Taras Shevchenko, ... , ... are famous Ukrainian writers. They wrote poetry in general. For example, such poems as ... are written by They deal with the beauty of native country, lives of poor people and love.

b) Talk about books you read (have read) at the lessons of Ukrainian and Foreign Literature.

- 6.** Work in pairs. Imagine the situation: you are visiting your friend and see his/her home library. Make up and act out the dialogue. Use the sentences:

- How many books have you got?
- Have you got any books by ... ?
- How many books by ... have you got?
- What do you advise me to read?
- Who is your favourite writer?
- What is your favourite book?
- May I have a look at this book?
- Is it worth reading?
- What does it deal with?
- Could you give me this book to read?

Joy

Surprise

**That's great!
It's a great piece of luck!
That's exactly what I wanted!
Terrific! Fantastic!**

**Really?
Impossible!
Just think!
I say! (*Tu podivusch!*)**

- 7.** Write a report "Books in our life". Use in it one of the sayings given on page 66.

<i>A room without books is like a body without a soul.</i> Cicero	Кімната без книжок, як тіло без душі. Цицерон
<i>A book is a mirror; if an ass peers into it you can't expect an apostle to look out.</i> Lichtenberg	Книга — це дзеркало: якщо туди зазирає осел, не сподівайтесь, що визирне апостол. Ліхтенберг
<i>The books that help you the most are those which make you think the most.</i> Parker	Найкращі книги — ті, що змушують вас замислитись найбільше. Паркер
<i>I divide all readers into two classes: those who read to remember and those who read to forget.</i> Phelps	Я поділяю усіх читачів на дві групи: тих, хто читає, щоб запам'ятати, і тих, хто читає, щоб забути. Фелпс
<i>Reading is to the mind what exercise is to the body.</i> Addison	Читання для розуму є тим, чим є фізичні вправи для тіла. Едісон

8. Work in groups to complete the story given below.
Discuss whose story did you like most of all.

How Tom Began to Like Reading

Once upon a time there lived a boy who didn't like to read. He spent all days long lying on a sofa and watching TV. Sometimes he even began to talk to TV set. But one day ...

II. Grammar Section

Passive Voice

Revision: Present Perfect Tense

Vocabulary

a main verb – основне дієслово

an auxiliary verb – допоміжне дієслово

by means – за допомогою

participle – дієприкметник

Past Participle (Participle II) –

дієприкметник минулого часу

to be placed – розташовуватись

a subject – 1) підмет; 2) суб'єкт дії

an object – 1) додаток; 2) об'єкт дії

to take place – відбуватися

result – результат

to continue – тривати

a voice – стан дієслова (*грам.*)

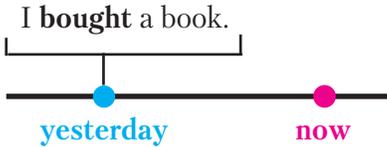
Active Voice – активний стан

Passive Voice – пасивний стан

1. **Revision.** a) Read, match the actions and sentences with the Past Indefinite and the Present Perfect Tenses and say what difference is between the Past Indefinite and the Present Perfect Tenses.

The Present Perfect Tense

Past Indefinite



Yesterday I cleaned my room, then I went shopping. I bought a book in a book-shop, some bread and vegetables at the super-market. Then I played football with my friends.

The Past Indefinite Tense is used to express:

- an action which took place before the present moment but the result of this action is very important now;
- a single action which took place in the past;
- some actions which repeated from time to time in the past;
- an action which began before the present moment and continued up to it.

I **have locked** the door.

We **went** to the theatre the day before yesterday.

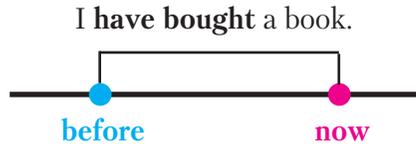
Have you turned off the gas?

Did you go in for sport five years ago?

They **have travelled** the country up to now.

I **took** music lessons three days a week last year.

Present Perfect



- We have a History lesson today. Do you remember the teacher asked you to buy a book about Cossacks?
- Yes, I do. I have already bought it.
- Have you read it yet?
- No, I haven't.

The Present Perfect Tense is used to express:

- b) Look at the scheme, complete the sentences and say how we form the Present Perfect Tense.

+	?	–
I (you, we, they) have asked . He (she, it) has asked .	Have I (you, we, they) asked ? Has he (she, it) asked ?	I (you, we, they) have not asked . He (she, it) has not asked .

- 1) The Present Perfect is formed by means of the auxiliary verb _____ and _____ of the main verb.
- 2) In the interrogative form the auxiliary verb is placed _____.
- 3) In the negative form _____ is used after _____.

c) Read the sentences and say what adverbs, time expressions and prepositions we can use with the Present Perfect Tense.

I **have just heard** this song on the radio.

Had you an English lesson **the day before yesterday**?

We **have not seen** him **this week**.

I **saw** her **every day**.

Has he **ever been** to Paris? – No, he **hasn't**. Oleh **has never been** to France.

She **has not been** there **yet**.

They **have already written** a dictation.

He **lived** in London and **spoke** English every day **five years ago**.

What **has happened**? – Olenka **has just broken** a cup.

When **did** it **happen**? – It **happened half an hour ago**.

I **have lived** here **since** last year.

Have you **ever played** the piano?

My cat **has slept for** three hours.

We **wrote** essays about theatres in Ukraine **yesterday**.

d) Work in pairs. Make up and act out the dialogue using the following scheme.

P₁:	Would you like	to go to the cinema	tonight
	Are you going	to watch a good film	...
	

P₂: Yes, I would but I can't.

P₂: Why not?

P₁:	Because I haven't	done my homework	yet.
		cleaned my room	
		...	

e) Speaking skills. Talk about books (films, plays) you have read (seen). Pay attention to the Past Indefinite and the Present Perfect Tenses. Start with: **Friends! Have you ever read books ... by Steven King?**

The Passive Voice

2. Read and compare sentences. Translate them. Say what the subjects and the objects of actions are. Then read the information about the Passive Voice.

My brother writes **letters** to **my granny** every day.

He wrote this **letter** yesterday.

Builders build **houses**.

The builders built **the Globe** in 1599.

Actors act **roles**.

Ukrainian actors acted **the leading roles**.

The letters are written every day.
(Листи пишуться щодня.)

This letter was written yesterday.
(Цей лист був написаний вчора.)

Houses are built **by builders**.

The Globe was built in 1599. **It** is situated in London.

Roles are acted **by actors**.

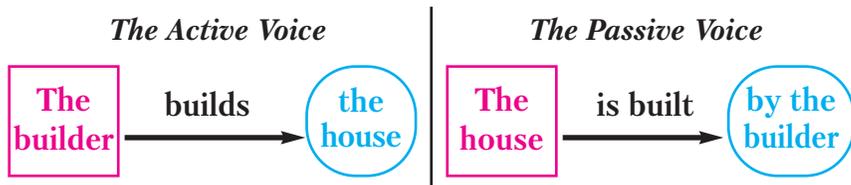
The leading roles were acted **by Ukrainian actors**.

These roles are often performed **by English ballet-dancers**.

The Subject and the Object of the Action

□ *The subject of the action* is a person or a thing that performs (виконує) an action.

○ *The object of the action* is a person or a thing that is acted upon (на який спрямована дія).



In the English language the verb has two voices: **the Active Voice** and **the Passive Voice**.

If *the subject of the action* is a subject of the sentence, we use the Active Voice. If *the object of the action* is a subject of the sentence, we use the Passive Voice.

The formation of the Passive Voice

The tenses of the Passive Voice are formed by means of the auxiliary verb **to be** and **Past Participle (Participle II)** of the main verb.

The Passive Voice: Present and Past Indefinite

to be + Participle II

I **am** examined.

He }
She } **is** examined.
It }

We }
You } **are** examined.
They }

I }
He } **was** examined.
She }
It }

We }
You } **were** examined.
They }

	+	?	-
P R E S E N T	I am dressed. He (she, it) is dressed. You (we, they) are dressed.	Am I dressed? Is he (she, it) dressed? Are you (we, they) dressed?	I am not dressed. He (she, it) is not dressed. You (we, they) are not dressed.

I **am** often **taken** by my parents to the concerts.

Батьки часто беруть мене на концерти.

This book is translated into English by O. Petrenko.

Ця книга перекладається на англійську О. Петренком.

These DVD-disks are often **sold** in audio shops.

Ці диски часто продаються в аудіо магазинах.

Are you seen? Тебе побачили (тебе видно)?

Where is this cinema situated?

Де розташований цей кінотеатр?

Who is this article written by?

Ким написана ця стаття?

How many letters are sent every Friday?

Скільки листів відправляють кожної п'ятниці?

I **am not** usually **told** about it.

Мені про це зазвичай не розповідають.

He is not allowed to do it.

Йому не дозволяють робити це.

Children are not invited to night parties.

Дітей не запрошують на нічні вечірки.

	+	?	-
P	I (he, she, it)	Was I (he, she, it)	I (he, she, it)
A	was invited .	invited ?	was not invited .
S	You (we, they)	Were you (we, they)	You (we, they)
T	were invited .	invited ?	were not invited .

I was invited to the theatre the day before yesterday.

Мене запросили до театру позавчора.

These plays were written by the great Ukrainian writer Ivan Kotliarevsky. *Ці н'еси були написані великим українським письменником Іваном Котляревським.*

The first Ukrainian film "Zvenyhora" was made by Oleksandr Dovzhenko **and shown** for the first time in 1928. *Перший український фільм був створений Олександром Довженком і вперше демонструвався у 1928 році.*

Were you seen? *Тебе бачили (тебе було видно)?*

When was The Ukrainian Theatre founded?

Коли був заснований "Український театр"?

Who was the screenplay of the film written by?

Ким було написано сценарій до цього фільму?

How many actors were chosen for the title-role?

Скільки акторів відібрали для виконання головної ролі?

I was not told about it before the performance.

Мені про це не розповідали до початку вистави.

He was not struck by the acting.

Гра акторів не справила на нього враження.

The New Year's performances were not begun in time.

Новорічні вистави не почалися вчасно.

- 3.** Read the information about making films and retell the text using the Passive Voice. Look up the words in bold in a dictionary.

For example:

Many people make a film. — A film is made by many people.

Many people make a film. They are **a script-writer, a cameraman, a designer, a director, a producer, a manager, actors, actresses** and other people.

The **script-writer** writes **a screenplay**. The **cameraman** makes the **photography**. The **designer** designs and draws **the sets** and costumes.

The **director** thinks over the **artistic side** of the film. The **producer finances** the film. The **manager** organizes the **distribution** of the film. **Actors** and **actresses act roles** in the film.

4. Make up 10 sentences from the table.

I	<i>to be</i>	founded	the Shakespeare's play	
This director		acted	"Romeo and Juliet"	at 8 o'clock in
The film		told	by a famous Ukrainian	the evening
This role		read	actress Olha Sumska	in childhood
A screenplay		presented	by a young talented	five years ago
The theatre		performed	scrip-writer	two hundred
We		shown	by the producer	years ago
You		written	by dancing of Ulanova	before showing
Spectators		invited	with beautiful flowers	on New Year's
Actors		struck	about the others works	Eve
Plays	closed	of this director	every year	
The library	situated	in the centre of the town	(often)	
The book	translated	into five languages	(usually)	
These books	built	by students		

b) Make interrogative and negative forms.

- 5.** Work in pairs. Your classmate says a sentence (with the subject and the object) using the Active Voice in the Present or Past Simple and you change it into the Passive Voice. Use the verbs: **to show, to perform, to buy, to sell, to act, to make, to draw, to paint, to write, to tell, to translate** and others.

For example:

P₁: We often write essays at the English lessons.

P₂: Essays are often written at the English lessons.

P₁: I took the book at the library yesterday.

P₂: The book was taken at the library yesterday.

- 6.** Work in groups. Your friends ask you to give them interesting books to read. Give them any books written by an English-speaking writer. Write and act out the polylogue.

Use the word-combinations and sentences:

Have you ever read... ? Is it worth reading? What kind of literature do you like?

To be written; to be translated; to be made into a movie/play; to be acted; to be shown; to be performed; at the cinema; at the theatre.

7. Speaking skills. Talk about cinemas and theatres in your native town (where they are situated; when they were built; what they are called; where the tickets are sold; etc.)

8. Listening.

a) Listen to the text.

b) Answer the questions.

If you see the icon choose the correct item A, B, C or D.

If you see the icon say if the sentences are true or false.

c) Retell the text.

- 1) Where did the boy and his father go at first?
- a) to the concert; c) to the ballet theatre;
b) to the cinema; d) to the theatre.
- 2) The cinema was closed, wasn't it?
- 3) Where was the ballet theatre situated?
- a) in the centre of the city; c) close to the cinema;
b) not far from the centre; d) not far from the cinema.
- 4) The boy wasn't a great theatre-goer, was he?
- 5) What ballet was performed that day?
- a) "Nutcracker"; c) "Swan Lake";
b) "The Sleeping Beauty"; d) "Sadko".
- 6) The music was written by Glinka, wasn't it?
- 7) Where was the cast written?
- a) on the bill-board; c) on the tickets;
b) in the play-bill; d) in a newspaper.
- 8) The dancers were from St. Petersburg, weren't they?

- 9) When did the performance begin?
- a) at eight o'clock; c) at nine o'clock;
b) at half past eight; d) at ten o'clock.
- 10) The dancers were presented with flowers, weren't they?

III. Oral Practice

The lesson at the library

Library ['laɪbrəri] *noun* [countable]

1) a room or building containing books that can be looked at or borrowed; 2) a group of books, records etc, collected by one person.

Taken from Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English

- a) You are at the school library. Look around and say what you see. What is the furniture made of? Use the words: **a bookcase, a bookshelf, a shelving, plastic, metal, wood.**

b) Tell your friends about your home library.
- a) Work in groups. Act out the situation "At the library". One pupil in the group is a librarian. The others are readers.

Use the words and sentences.

How does one join this library?
You just have to fill in this reader's card.

What are you interested in?

What books do you like to read?

I am interested in books ...

- in English
- by English writers

I'm interested in ...

- technical literature
- science fiction

I'd like some books on ...

- history
- geography

Where is ... ?

Як записатися до цієї бібліотеки?

Вам потрібно лише заповнити читачький формуляр.

Чим ви цікавитесь?

Які книжки ви любите читати?

Я цікавлюсь книжками ...

- англійською мовою
- англійських письменників

Я цікавлюсь ...

- технічною літературою
- фантастикою

Мені потрібні книжки з ...

- історії
- географії

Де знаходиться ... ?

- the author catalogue
- the subject catalogue
- bibliography section
- reference section
- periodical section
- manuscript division
- reading room

What are the rules for readers in your library?

At what hours is the library (reading room) open?

When shall I return the book?

The book is out.

Could you keep the book for me when it is brought back, please?

What is the call number?

You can find it in a card index (the author/subject catalogue).

- алфавітний каталог
- предметний показчик
- бібліографічний відділ
- довідковий відділ
- відділ періодики
- рукописний відділ
- читальна зала

Які правила для читачів у вашій бібліотеці?

В які години працює бібліотека (читальна зала)?

Коли я мушу повернути книгу?

Ця книга на руках.

Залиште цю книгу для мене, коли її повернуть, будь ласка.

Який шифр книги?

Ви можете його знайти у картотеці (алфавітному/ предметному каталозі).

b) Explain the meaning of the underlined words (ask your school librarian if you don't know). Tell your classmates about your school library.

3. a) Read the dialogue which American pupils had at the English lesson at the library. Talk about encyclopedias: what they are, how to use them, if you have got them at home, how often you use them.

Librarian: Dear friends! What are encyclopedias? Who can tell me?

P₁: May I answer this question because I often use them in my work? Encyclopedias contain facts about people, places, ideas and so on. Some encyclopedias deal with only one field such as art or science. Other encyclopedias cover general information – almost everything from A to Z.

P₂: If you don't object, I want to add a few words about advantages of encyclopedias. They save your time. Without them, you might have to read an entire book on a subject to find just a few facts. Encyclopedias also stimulate your interest. Sometimes learning a little about a subject makes you find some more interesting information in different books, magazines and newspapers.

Librarian: Today I want to give you some pieces of good advice. I hope they will help you in your work.

An encyclopedia can be one book. Usually, however, it is a set of books. Subjects in an encyclopedia are arranged in alphabetical order. Each book has a letter or letters on the outside.

How to Use Encyclopedias

Find **a key word**. For example, you want to find the answer to the question “When was ‘Romeo and Juliet’ by Shakespeare written?” So you should look for the word *Shakespeare* first of all. Take the book with the letters “S”. After you open the encyclopedia, look at the words in the upper corner of each page – **guide words**. They can help you to find the page you need quickly. Finally, you locate *Shakespeare*. But the article is loaded with information! Try to read only the first one or two sentences in each paragraph.

Perhaps you would like to learn more about your subject. So you should look at the end of the article. Usually **cross references** are listed there. They are references from one part of a book to another. Cross references for *Shakespeare* might direct you to an article on *English literature*, *Globe (theatre)*, *comedies and tragedies*, etc.

Taking Notes

When pupils have to write a report or give a talk, they often use encyclopedias. Many of them don’t do it correctly. They copy an article word for word. The right way is to read an article several times. Then close the encyclopedia before you start writing. In your own words, write what you remember in note cards. Then check your notes with the contents of the article. Correct any mistakes, but keep the wording your own.

Information about the surrounding world constantly changes in time. World events change countries and people. Scientific discoveries add something new to what scientists already know. Check the dates of the encyclopedias you use.

b) Work in groups with encyclopedias. Find some information about any English or American writer. Translate it into English (if encyclopedia is Ukrainian or Russian).

c) Find some information about your favourite writer and tell your friends about him/her.

4. Find in the library your favourite book (or the books written by your favourite writer) and tell your friends about it.

5. a) Speaking skills. Talk about other libraries in your native place.
b) Read and act out the dialogues.

- Oleh! Could you tell me how to get to the Central Public Library? I need to write a report on American literature.
- Oh! It is a very good library. I think you can find a lot of books on your subject there. You can get there by bus number 5. Go to Pushkin Stop. Then ask the way to the library. It is not far from the bus stop.
- Thank you very much.
- Not at all.

-
- Excuse me, is this the right way to the Central Public Library?
 - Sorry, I think you are wrong.
 - Ah! What is the name of this street?
 - It's Kovpak Street.
 - How can I get to the library?
 - It's not very far from Lypova bus stop. You can get there by bus number 20. Then go straight ahead. Take the third turning on your right.
 - Thank you very much.
 - Not at all.

c) Work in pairs. Make up a dialogue in which you need to ask the way to the library, theatre or cinema. Pay attention that names of theatres, cinemas, concert halls, clubs are used with the definite article while names of streets, parks, bus stops and underground stations are not.

Use the sentences:

Does bus number ... go to ... ?

Where is the nearest bus stop (underground station)?

Is this the right way to ... ?

Is this far (nearby)?

Can I get there by bus (trolley-bus, underground)?

Is it too far to go there on foot?

Could you tell me how to get to ... ? (How can I get to ... street?)

What is the name of this street, please?

Does this street go to ... ?

It's round the corner (on the left, on the right).

Turn to the left (to the right).

6. Speak about the film which is the screen version of the novel you have read. Use the words and the sentences:

In my opinion; I think ... ; as far as I know ...;

to be made into plays/ movies;

to be a screen version of a novel;

The book is written by ...

I like/don't like this book very much.

The director has (hasn't) change the content of the book very much;

The film is/isn't better/worse than the book;

to be dull (exciting) – бути нудним (захоплюючим);

the action is slow (swift moving) – дія розгортається повільно (дуже швидко);

the plot is thrilling (weak) – сюжет захопливий (млявий);

the acting is perfect (not good at all) – гра досконала (не зовсім вдала);

my sympathies are/were with ... – мені особисто подобається/сподобався (певний актор);

to act the title-role (leading role) – виконувати головну роль;

to act the part of ... – грати роль певного героя.

7. **Project work “Kinds of Literature”.** Work in groups. Talk about different kinds of literature. Each group tell the classmates about one of the kind of literature. Find the books of this kind at the library and talk about one of them. Ask your friends if they have read it yet.
Make up a list of your favourite books.

IV. Reading

1. Before you start reading, answer the questions given below:
- 1) Who is Agatha Christie?
 - 2) What kind of literature did she write?
 - 3) Do you like reading this kind of books?
 - 4) What detective stories by Agatha Christie do you know?
 - 5) Which of them have you read?
 - 6) Have you seen any films which are screen versions of her novels?
 - 7) Do you know other writers who wrote detective stories?

2. Read the text and say what it deals with.

Agatha Christie (1890–1976)

Agatha Christie was born in Torquay, in the county of Devon. Her father died when she was a child and Christie was educated at home. She began to write from a very early age. At sixteen she was sent to school in Paris where she studied singing and playing the piano. Christie was an accomplished pianist but because of her stage fright and shyness she didn't make herself a career in music. When Christie's mother



took her to Cairo for a winter, she wrote a novel there. Her neighbour and friend in Torquay was Eden Philpotts. According to his advice she devoted herself to writing and had her short stories published.

In 1914 Christie married Archibald Christie, an officer in the Flying Royal Corps; their daughter, Rosalind, was born in 1919. During World War I she worked in a Red Cross Hospital in Torquay as a hospital dispenser, which gave her knowledge of poisons. It was to be useful when she started writing mysteries. Christie's first detective novel, "The Mysterious Affair at Styles", introduced Hercule Poirot, the Belgian detective, who appeared in more than 40 books, the last of which was "Curtain" (1975).

Poirot was a nice comic character with an egg-shaped head. Her other detective was Miss Marple, an elderly woman who liked to solve questions dealing with crimes. She was born and lived in the village of St. Mary Mead. Marple was featured in 17 novels, the first being "Murder At The Vicarage" (1930) and the last "Sleeping Murder" (1976). It's a fact that her own grandmother was that person upon which a main character of novels was based.

In the course of 56 years Christie wrote 66 detective novels, among the best of which are "The Murder of Roger Acroyd", "A Murder On The Orient Express" (1934), "Death On The Nile" (1937) and "Ten Little Indians" (1939). In addition to these works, Christie wrote her autobiography (1976) and several plays, including "The Mousetrap", which ran more than 30 years in London and had 8,862 performances at the Ambassadors Theatre.

Christie's marriage broke up in 1926. Archie Christie, who worked in the City, had fallen in love with a younger woman, Nancy Neele. Her divorce was finalized in 1928 and two years later she married the archaeologist Max Mallowan. She had met him on her travels in Middle East in 1927 and accompanied him on his excavations of sites in Syria and Iraq. Later Christie used these exotic settings in her novels "A Murder In Mesopotamia" (1936) and "Death on the Nile" (1937). Her own archaeological adventures were recounted in "Come & Tell Me How You Live" (1946). Mallowan was Catholic and fourteen years younger than she; he became one of the most prominent archaeologist of his generation. About her marriage the writer told the reporters the following: "An archaeologist is the best husband any woman can have. The older she gets, the more interested he is in her." Mallowan worked in Iraq in the 1950s but returned to England, when Christie's health grew weaker.

Christie's most prolific period began in the late 1920s. During the 1930s she published four mystery novels, fourteen Poirot novels, two Marple novels, two Superintendent Battle books, a book of stories featuring Harley Quin and another featuring Mr. Parker Pyne and two original plays. In 1936 she published the first of six psychological romance novels under the pseudonym Mary Westmacott.

During World War II Christie worked in the dispensary of University College Hospital in London. After the war she continued to write a lot, also gaining success on the stage and in the cinema. "Witness for the Prosecution", for example, was chosen as the best foreign play of the 1954-55 season by the New York Drama Critics Circle. The play was put on in London in October 1953 and by December 1954, it was on Broadway. Among the many film adaptations were "Murder on the Orient Express" (1974), directed by Sidney Lumet and with Albert Finney as Poirot and "Death on the Nile" (1978), with Peter Ustinov as Poirot.

In 1967 Christie became president of the British Detection Club and in 1971 she was made a Dame of the British Empire. Christie died on January 12, 1976 in Wallingford, Oxfordshire. Her literary heritage made up 100 novels and 103 translations into foreign languages. By the time of her death Christie was the best-selling English novelist of all times.

3. Choose the correct item A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

- 1) At sixteen Agatha was sent to school to study ____ .
A. literature
B. singing and piano
C. writing poems
D. poisons
- 2) She had ____ .
A. two children
B. two daughters
C. a son
D. a daughter
- 3) During World War I she worked ____ .
A. at the chemist's shop
B. as a nurse
C. in a hospital
D. at school
- 4) The characters of most of her novel were ____ .
A. Hercule Poirot
B. Miss Marple
C. Mr. Sherlock Holmes
D. Mr. Parker Pyne
- 5) In 1936 the first of her ____ were published.
A. psychological romance novels
B. philosophical romance novels
C. historical novels
D. novels about war

4. Say if the following sentences are true (T) or false (F).

- 1) Agatha Christie was educated at home.
- 2) At sixteen she was sent to school in London.
- 3) Agatha didn't make herself a career in music because of her love to literature.
- 4) Christie's first detective novel, "The Mysterious Affair at Styles", introduced Hercule Poirot, the Belgian detective.
- 5) Her other detective was Mrs Marple, a young woman who liked to solve questions dealing with crimes.
- 6) The main character of the novels about Marple was based upon a person of her own grandmother.
- 7) Her second husband was an archaeologist.
- 8) During World War II Christie worked in University College Hospital in London.
- 9) In 1971 she was made a Dame of the British Empire.
- 10) Her literary heritage made up 103 novels and 100 translations into foreign languages.

5. Retell the text using the sentences given below.

I have read the text about ... (It deals with ...) It is (isn't) interesting.
I (don't) like it because ... I have learnt that ... It was interesting to learn ... I didn't know that ...

6. Speaking skills. Talk about detective stories you have read.
7. Write an essay about one of the character of any detective story.

V. Writing

1. a) Work in pairs: dictate and write down the words that you've learnt during your previous lessons. Make up sentences with them. If you don't know how to write the word, ask your friend to spell it.
b) Write an essay (not more than 16 sentences) about books (theatres or cinemas).
2. Write the sentences choosing the right form of the verb from the brackets. Say if the sentences are used in Active or Passive Voice.

1. The New Year's performance (*shows, is shown, is showing, has shown, was shown*) by the children to their parents at our school the day before yesterday. 2. These actors (*choose, are choosing, were chosen, have chosen*) by the director a month ago. 3. The puppet theatre (*closes, is closed, closed, was closed*) now. 4. We (*don't allow, are not allowed, didn't allow, were not allowed*) to watch that film because it was a horror film. 5. The ballet "The Snow Queen" (*performs, is performed, is performing, was performed*) for little schoolchildren in our school theatre every year. 6. I (*tell, was told, am telling, told, am told*) many Ukrainian fairy tales by my granny in childhood. 7. When ... the Lesia Ukrainka Theatre ... (*does found, did found, has founded, is founded, was founded*)? 8. We (*watch, were watched, are watched, watched, have watched*) this films on TV several times. 9. Whom ... that letter ... (*did send, was sent, does send, is sending, is sent*) yesterday to? 10. My brother (*reads, read, was read, is read*) in the article that a young talented designer ... (*designs and draws, designed and drew, was designed and drawn, is designed and drawn*) the sets and costumes for that film. 11. Who ... these letters usually ... (*did send, were sent, do send, are sending, are sent, have sent*) by? 12. Agatha Christie ... (*writes, wrote, has written, is written, was written*) detective novels.

3. Make negative sentences and put questions to the italicized words.

1. The tickets were sold *in the box-office*. 2. They were shown *the puppet show "Ivasyk-Telesyk"*. 3. *The opera house* was situated in

Luhanska street earlier. 4. *That actress* was much written about five years ago. 5. Cinemas are closed *now*. 6. You were asked to get tickets for the stalls because our guests didn't like to have seats far from the stage. 7. This play is written by *three* authors. 8. *I was told to leave my coat in the cloak-room*. 9. *His* books are translated into several foreign languages. 10. I was deeply impressed *by the poetry of this young talented poet*.

4. Change the following sentences into the Passive Voice.

1. A young Ukrainian writer Vasyl Symonenko wrote a poem "A handful of Soil". 2. I read English books every day. 3. Oleksandr Dovzhenko made a film "Zvenyhora" in 1928. 4. We colour Easter eggs and give them to our friends on Easter. 5. People borrow books at a library.

5. Work in pairs. Write and act out the dialogue "At the Library".

6. Keeping a reader's dairy. Read the information and make up your own reader's dairy.

Many readers keep **a reader's diary**. It can help them to make up the system of the books they have read. They can remember the information which they have read.

The reader's dairy is very important and convenient for pupils and students because they have to read many books. By the way, many teachers allow their students to use the reader's dairies at exams.

What is the reader's dairy? It is a copy-book where a reader writes information about the book he has read: an author, a title, characters, a plot and some **quotations** (a sentence or phrase from a book). Read the example and write some reader's notes for your reader's book.

Title	"Robinson Crusoe"
Author	by Daniel Defoe
Characters	1) Robinson Crusoe, seaman, Yorker (England), the son of a businessman from Bremen; 2) Friday, a black man

<p>Plot</p>	<p>After his ship is destroyed, Robinson Crusoe has to live on a desert island. At first he thinks he is alone, but one day he finds a black man living there who he calls Friday because he meets him on Friday.</p>
<p>Quotations</p>	<p>1) The Robinson's Dairy: <i>30 September 1659. I, poor unhappy Robinson Crusoe, was ship-wrecked in a terrible storm and came on shore on this island. All the rest of the ship's company were drowned and I myself hardly perished.</i></p> <p>2) About Man Friday: <i>He was a fine, well-made young man of about twenty-five with straight, strong arms and legs. He was tall and well-built, with a very good, kind face, specially when he smiled. His hair was long, straight and black, his forehead was wide and high and he had sharp, intelligent eyes. His skin was pleasant, warm brown. His face was round, his nose small, but not flat and he had a good mouth with thin lips and strong white teeth.</i></p> <p>3) The finale: <i>So, I said good-bye to my island. I took with me my goat-skin cap, my umbrella and my parrot; also the money, including the silver and gold from the wreck of the Spanish ship.</i> <i>And so, with my good companion Friday, on 19 December 1686, I left my island. I had been there for twenty-eight years, two months and nineteen days. We had many other adventures, which I may perhaps describe to you some day.</i></p>

7. **Internet Skills.** Come to www.icqhelp.net/first and load ICQ (computer programme). There you can read how to load and use ICQ. Write your first dialogue with your new friend.



ICQ (I Seek You – я ищу тебя) helps people to find new friends all over the world and talk to them sending on-line messages.

VI. Time for Fun

1. Read the information and play a game “Fortune-telling” using any English book.

Some people like to tell fortunes. There are many different methods of doing it: you can tell fortunes by cards, by a hand, by coffee ground and even by camomile.

But some people like to tell fortunes by books. They name the number of page and line. Then they open the book and read.

For example: F. S. Fitzgerald “The Sensible Thing”, page 59, line 12 – *“You won’t marry me, will you?” he said quietly.*

What does it mean? What do you think about it?

2. Find in the crossword (down and across) the surnames of the writers which wrote the following books. Make the sentences in Passive Voice with them.

Q	W	E	R	T	Y	U	I	O	P	S	A	S	D	F
H	J	K	L	Z	X	C	V	B	N	H	F	C	F	G
M	N	B	V	C	X	Z	A	S	S	A	D	R	F	G
P	O	I	U	Y	K	T	R	K	E	K	W	I	Q	A
M	H	G	R	D	O	S	T	O	Y	E	V	S	K	Y
Q	W	S	C	V	T	F	E	T	T	S	G	T	S	Y
C	A	R	R	O	L	L	E	T	R	P	B	I	H	T
R	P	O	I	U	Y	Y	T	R	E	E	G	E	B	V
Z	X	C	V	B	A	N	M	J	G	A	F	D	S	E
M	P	B	R	D	R	E	I	S	E	R	S	B	R	W
D	F	G	H	R	E	E	W	N	F	E	D	L	K	J
M	N	B	T	V	V	E	R	N	E	C	X	Z	R	E
H	G	F	W	D	S	S	N	B	V	C	X	D	S	A
R	E	M	A	R	K	I	U	Y	B	V	C	F	D	S
I	H	D	I	M	Y	U	Y	T	R	E	B	V	K	J
P	O	I	N	U	Y	T	R	E	W	Q	J	H	G	R

- 1) “Natalka–Poltavka”
- 2) “Three Friends”
- 3) “American Tragedy”
- 4) “King Lear”
- 5) “Around the World in Eighty days”
- 6) “Ten Little Indians”
- 7) “The Adventures of Tom Sawyer”
- 8) “Idiot”
- 9) “Alice in Wonderland”
- 10) “Ivanhoe”

HOMEWORK

1. Find the books of different genres at home and prepare a speech “Tastes differ” about books. Speaking illustrate your report by showing the books you have found.
2. **Project work.** Make an album “Our favourite writers”. Write essays about your favourite writers, add their portraits and put them together into the album.

3. Work in groups. Find in any English book a dialogue/polylogue and act it out at your English lesson.
4. Find in an English book or newspaper 10 sentences in the Present/Past Indefinite Tense (Passive Voice). Make negative and interrogative forms of them.
5. Answer the questions and tell your teacher about your native region.
 - 1) Where do you live?
 - 2) Where is your native town situated?
 - 3) Is your native town marked on the map of Ukraine?
 - 4) Is your region written much about by writers?
 - 5) What new buildings are/were built in your town?
 - 6) Are there many sights (places of interest) in your town?
6. Read the saying and write an essay about books (explain the meaning of the aphorism).

Some books are tasted; others are swallowed ; and some few are chewed and digested. (Bacon)

7. Find in a newspaper what is on at the cinemas and theatres of your native place and write the information about it in English.
8. **Project work.** Hold a **literary soiree**¹ devoted to English and American writers in your class.
9. Imagine that you are talking in ICQ to an English boy/girl about your favourite book/film/writer. Write your dialogue.
10. Watch the beginning of any English-speaking film and write who this film was directed by, produced by, what the cast was, etc. Tell your classmates about it.

For Example:

The Lord of the Rings

Directed by: Peter Jackson

Written by: J.R.R. Tolkien (novel “The Fellowship of the Ring”);
Fran Walsh and others.

Produced by: Peter Jackson, Barre M. Osborne, Tim Sanders and others.

¹ літературний вечір



Original Music by: Howard Shore

Cinematography by: Andrew Lesnie

Film Editing by: John Gilbert

Production Design by: Grant Major

Art Direction by: Joe Bleakly

Set Decoration by: Alan Lee

Costume Design by: Ngila Dickson and others

Cast: Elijah Wood, Sean Bean, Orlando Bloom, Sean Astin, Kate Blanchett and others.

Home Reading

1. Read the beginning of the story “Problem at Pollensa Bay” by Agatha Christie and look up new words in a dictionary.

The steamer from Barcelona to Majorca landed Mr. Parker Pyne at Palma in the early hours of the morning. The hotels were full! Palma was popular now! Everyone – the English, the Americans – they all came to Majorca in the winter.

At a quarter to ten, he went out onto the small terrace for coffee and rolls. There were four tables there. At the nearest him sat a family of father and mother and two elderly daughters – Germans. Beyond them, at the corner of the terrace, sat an English mother and son.

The woman was about fifty-five. She had grey hair of a pretty tone. She was not fashionably dressed in a tweed coat and skirt.

The young man was twenty-five and he was typical of his class and age. He was neither good-looking nor plain, neither tall nor short.

The English boy rose from his seat, made some laughing remark and passed into the hotel. The woman took her letters and bag and settled herself in a chair facing the sea. Mr. Parker Pyne glanced in her direction. Her eyes were bright with tears...

Mr. Parker Pyne found Basil Chester a most likeable young man. He called Mr. Parker Pyne "sir" and listened most politely to anything the older man said. Sometimes the three English people had coffee together after dinner in the evening. After the third day, Basil left the party after ten minutes or so and Mr. Parker Pyne was left *tete-a-tete* with Mrs. Chester.

They talked about flowers, of the state of the English pound and of how difficult was to get good afternoon tea.

Little by little she began to talk of Basil – of how well he had done at school, of how everyone liked him, of how thankful she had been that Basil had never been wild. Of course I always allow him to be with young people but he really prefers being with me. Of course there are a lot of Artists, a lot of young people doing nothing – and the girls drink a lot too much."

On the following day Basil said to Mr. Parker Pyne:

"I'm awfully glad you are here, sir – especially for my mother. She likes having you to talk to in the evenings."

"What did you do when you were first here?"

"We used to play piquet."

"I see," said Mr. Parker Pyne.

"Of course one gets tired of piquet. As a matter of fact I've got some friends here. I don't really think my mother likes them." He laughed. "The mater she is very old-fashioned... Even girls in trousers shock her! The girls at home round us are very dull..."

"I see," said Mr. Parker Pyne.

All this interested him well enough.

And then the worst – from Mr. Parker Pyne's point of view – happened. A lady of his acquaintance came to stay at the Mariposa. They met in the tea shop in the presence of Mrs. Chester.

The new-comer screamed:

"Oh! Mr. Parker Pyne! And Adela Chester! Do you know each other? Oh, you do? You're staying at the same hotel? He's the one

and only original wizard! What? Didn't you know? You must have heard about him? Haven't you read his advertisements? 'Are you in trouble? Consult Mr. Parker Pyne.' There's just nothing he can do. If you've lost interest in life he gives you the most thrilling adventures. As I say the man's just a wizard!"

That evening, after coffee, Mrs. Chester said:

"Mr. Pyne, there is something I want to say to you. My boy, Mr. Parker Pyne. You must save him. We must save him. It's breaking my heart. Nina Wycherley says you can do anything. She advised me to tell you."

He said:

"Well, a girl, I suppose?"

"Did he tell you about her?"

"Only indirectly."

Words poured in a stream from Mrs. Chester. "The girl was dreadful. She drank, she wore no clothes to speak of. Her sister was married to an artist – a Dutchman. Half of them were living together without being married. Basil was completely changed. He had always been so quiet, so interested in serious subjects."

"Well, well," said Mr. Parker Pyne. "It isn't healthy for a young man to be interested in serious subjects."

"Please be serious, Mr. Pyne."

"I'm perfectly serious. He should like the young lady, by any chance the one who had tea with you yesterday."

He had noticed her – her grey flannel trousers – the scarlet handkerchief tied around her breast – the vermilion mouth and the fact that she had chosen a cocktail in preference to tea.

"You saw her? Terrible!"

"You haven't given him much chance to admire a girl, have you?"

"I?"

"He's been too fond of your company! Bad!"

"You don't understand. He wants to marry this girl – Betty Gregg."

"It's gone as far as that?"

"Yes. Mr. Parker Pyne, you must do something. His whole life will be ruined."

"Nobody's life can be ruined except by themselves."

"Basil's will be," said Mrs. Chester positively.

"I'm not worrying about Basil."

“You’re not worrying about the girl?”

“No, I’m worrying about you.”

Mrs. Chester said:

“Basil is everything to me.”

“Well. Love him as much as you like – but you’re Adela Chester, remember, a person – not just Basil’s mother.”

“It will break my heart if Basil’s life is ruined,” said Basil’s mother.

“I’ll see what I can do.”

He found Basil Chester to talk.

“Mother’s hopeless. If only she would let herself, she would see how fine Betty is.”

“And Betty?”

“Betty and Mother are two of my dearest people in the world... I wish you’d come along and see Betty and have a good talk about it all.”

Mr. Parker Pyne accepted the invitation.

Betty and her sister and her husband lived in a small villa a little way back from the sea. Their life was simple. Their furniture comprised three chairs, a table and beds. There was a cupboard in the wall that held cups and plates. Hans was a young man with wild blond hair that stood up all over his head. He spoke very old English. Stella, his wife, was small and fair. Betty Gregg had red hair and freckles and cheerful eyes.

She gave him a cocktail and said with a twinkle:

“And whose side are you on, big boy? The young lovers – or the dame?”

“May I ask you a question?”

“Certainly.”

“Have you been very tactful over all this?”

“Not at all,” said Miss Gregg frankly. “That woman just makes me feel mad. She’s kept Basil tied to her apron strings all these years – that sort of thing makes a man look a fool. Basil isn’t a fool really.”

“That’s not really such a bad thing. It’s ‘unfashionable’ at present.”

“Perhaps you’re right. I’ll be honest. I’ve heard about you, Mr. Parker Pyne. You know something about human nature. Do you think Basil and I could make a go of it – or not?”

“I should like an answer to three questions.”

“Suitability test? All right, go ahead.”

“Do you sleep with your window open or shut?”

“Open. I like lots of air.”

“Do you and Basil enjoy the same kind of food?”

“Yes.”

“Do you like going to bed early or late?”

“Really, early. At half-past ten.”

“You suit each other very well,” said Mr. Parker Pyne.

“Rather a superficial test.”

Mr. Parker Pyne’s face told nothing...

Next day Mr. Parker Pyne was going to Seller for a week.

To be continued...

- 2.** Prepare some questions and tasks for your classmates about the story you have read:
 - a) choose the correct item A, B, C or D to complete the sentences;
 - b) say if the sentences are true or false.

- 3.** Retell the story using the sentences given below. Describe the main characters.

I have read the story under the title

It is written by ...

The story is about ... (It deals with ...)

The main characters are ...

It is (isn't) interesting.

I (don't) like it because ...

- 4.** Discuss the story in class. Give your point of view.
 - 1) Is it healthy for a young man or woman to be interested in serious subjects?
 - 2) Is it normal for a young woman and a man to live together without being married?
 - 3) Does it matter how people are clothed?
 - 4) Should parents know about personal relations of their children and give them some pieces of good advice?
 - 5) Whose side are you on – the young lovers – or the loving mother?
 - 6) Should a husband and a wife have the same interests, habits, tastes? Is it important for a happy family life?
 - 7) Do you like suitability tests? What do you think about them?
 - 8) What would you do if you were Mr. Parker Pyne (Basil, Betty)?

Check Yourself!

Choose the correct item a, b, c or d.

Complete the sentences.

1. The first examples of historical novel were written ___ famous English writer Sir Walter Scott.

- a) with
- b) on
- c) by
- d) of

2. I went ___ the cinema yesterday.

- a) to
- b) in
- c) for
- d) at

3. Unfortunately nowadays ___ isn't a very popular activity.

- a) a book
- b) reading
- c) literature
- d) a reader

4. My brother likes to read true information about real historical events therefore he often takes ___ at a library.

- a) non-fiction
- b) historical novels
- c) science fiction
- d) adventures

5. Find the wrong item.

- a) A novel is a long written story in which the characters and events are usually imaginary.
- b) A play is a piece of writing performed in a theatre, consisting of speeches and conversations between several characters.
- c) A film is a story that is told using sound and moving pictures, shown at a cinema or on television.
- d) A poem is a set of printed pages that you can read.

6. Find the question to the answer.

We were shown a play of Shakespeare in the evening.

- a) What are we usually shown in the evenings?
- b) What did you show in the evening?
- c) What are you showing?
- d) What were you shown in the evening?

7. Find the answer to the question.

What's on?

- a) That is a book "Mermaid" by Anderson on the table.
- b) There is the leading actor on the stage.
- c) The play "Inspector-General" by Gogol is performed.
- d) I went to the theatre on foot.

8. Find the correct sentence.

- a) Who was the screenplay written for the film by?
- b) Who did the screenplay write for the film by?
- c) Who were the screenplay written for the film by?
- d) Who are the screenplay written for the film by?

9. Find the sentence in the Present Indefinite (Passive Voice).

- a) This novel isn't written by Taras Shevchenko.
- b) The poems were not translated into English.
- c) We haven't broadcasted the screen version of the novel yet.
- d) Our reporter doesn't take interviews with prose writers.

10. Find Past Participle (Participle II) of the verb to show.

- a) shows
- b) shown
- c) showed
- d) showing

11. Choose the correct variant to translate the sentence.

Цей фільм жахів не дозволено дивитись дітям до 16 років.

- a) Children under sixteen are allowed to see this horror film.
- b) Children under sixteen aren't allowed to see this horror film.
- c) Children under sixteen can not see this horror film.
- d) Children under sixteen have not seen this horror film.

12. Choose the proper sentence.

You came to the library. You asked a librarian to give you "Harry Potter" by J.K. Rowling in English. But someone else has already taken the book. The librarian says to you:

- a) The book is out.
- b) The book is absent.
- c) Come out, please.
- d) There isn't this book at the library.

UNIT 3 *** SOURCES OF INFORMATION

I. Language Material

1. a) Listen and repeat the words in the right column.
Pay attention to the correct pronunciation.
b) Read the sentences in the left column. Pay attention to the proper intonation.
c) Say what role does mass media play in your life.

The word **information** means “facts or details that tell you something about a situation, person, event, etc.”

information that: *We have received information that Dan lives in London.*

[+ about/on]: *The book contains information about animals.*

provide information: *He will provide you with information about the area.*

gather/collect information: *We collect information about UK singers.*

for your information: (*spoken*) is used when you are telling someone that they are wrong: *For your information, Sydney isn't a capital of Australia.*

The **synonyms** of the word ‘**information**’ are ‘**facts**’ and ‘**news**’.

A **fact** is **true** information.

it's a fact/that's a fact: *It's a fact that smoking is very dangerous. It can cause lung cancer – that's a fact.*

I know for a fact that (*spoken*) is used to say that you know for sure that something is true: *I know for a fact that our school was built in 1976.*

information [ˌɪnfə'meɪʃ(ə)n] інформація

to provide [prə'vaɪd] забезпечувати

provide information – надавати інформацію

to gather [ˈgæðə] збирати

to collect [kə'lekt] збирати

gather/collect information

– збирати інформацію

for your information – щоб ви знали ...

a synonym ['sɪnənɪm] синонім

a fact [fækt] факт

true [tru:] правдивий

it's a fact / that's a fact – це факт, що ...

I know for a fact that ... – Я знаю напевно ...

News is information about something that has happened recently.

[+ **about/of**]: *There hasn't been any news of him since he left Kyiv. I have some news about his sister.*

[+ **that**]: *There is the news that Ukrainian footballers won the game.*

The **sources** of information are **mass media** and **Internet**.

The Internet is a computer system that **allows** millions of **computer users** around the world to **exchange** information.

The mass media are **television, radio** and **newspapers**.

A **newspaper** is a set of large **sheets** of paper which **contains** news, **articles**, pictures, **advertisements**.

Newspapers can be **daily** or **weekly**. The **dailies** can be morning or evening.

They can **supply** any kind of information: political, economic, cultural and sport news.

The **articles** can **cover** the latest international, national and local events, all kinds of **rumours**, advertising, fun stories, **biographies** of well-known people, etc.

A **magazine** is a large thin book with a paper **cover** that **contains** news,

news [nju:z] новина (-и)

a source [sɔ:s] джерело
mass media [ˌmæsˈmi:diə]

засоби масової інформації

Internet [ˈɪntənɛt]

to allow [əˈlaʊ] дозволяти,
давати можливість

a computer user [kəmˌpju:tə
ˈju:zə] користувач ПК

to exchange [ɪksˈtʃeɪndʒ]
обмінюватись

a newspaper [ˈnju:sˌpeɪpə]
газета

a sheet [ʃi:t] аркуш

to contain [kənˈteɪn] міс-
тити

an article [ˈɑ:tɪkl] стаття

an advertisement

[ədˈvɜ:tɪsmənt] реклама

daily [ˈdeɪli] щоденний

a daily – щоденна газета

weekly [ˈwi:kli] щотижневий

a weekly – тижнева газета

to supply [səˈplaɪ] надавати

to cover [ˈkʌvə] огортати,
накривати, охоплювати

a cover – обкладинка

a rumour [ˈru:mə] чутка

a biography [baɪˈɒgrəfi]
біографія

a magazine [ˌmæɡəˈzi:n]
журнал

stories, articles, photographs, etc. It is **printed** and sold weekly or **monthly**. Magazines provide information on a wide **range** of topics such as business, culture, hobbies, medicine, religion, science and sports. They can contain tales, stories, poetry, photography or articles about TV or **movie stars**.

A **radio** is a piece of electronic **equipment** which you use to listen to **programmes** that are **broadcasted**, such as music and news.

Radio is also the activity of making and **broadcasting** programmes.

Radio **broadcasts** music, news, interviews, discussions, description of sports events, advertising.

Recently FM radio has become very popular.

FM is a system used for broadcasting radio programmes which produces a very clear sound.

The word '**television**' has several meanings.

- 1) a **television set (TV set)**;
- 2) a way of broadcasting programmes;
- 3) the programmes are broadcasted in this way;
- 4) the business of making and broadcasting programmes on television.

Many **viewers** around the world are fond of watching different shows, movies, sports, plays, games, educational and cultural programmes **on TV**. Mass media have become an important part of our life.

to print [prɪnt] друкувати
monthly ['mʌnθli] щомісячний

a monthly – щомісячний журнал

range [reɪndʒ] ряд

a star [stɑ:] зірка

a movie star ['mu:vi stɑ:] кінозірка

a TV star – телезірка

radio ['reɪdɪəʊ] радіо

equipment [ɪ'kwɪpmənt] обладнання

programme *BrE (program*

AmE) ['prəʊgræm] програма

to broadcast ['brɔ:dkɑ:st] транслювати, віщати

recently ['ri:sntli] останнім часом, нещодавно

FM [ˌef 'em]

television (TV) ['telɪvɪʒən, 'ti:vi:] телебачення (ТБ)

on TV – по телевізору

a television set (TV set) – телевізор

a viewer ['vjʊ:ə] глядач

Many young people want to be **journalists, reporters, correspondents**, etc.

We all already became listeners, readers, viewers **long time ago**. We get information **while** we are reading newspapers and magazines, watching TV, listening to the news on the radio. If we want to relax, we can just **switch on** any FM station and enjoy music or we **switch on** our TV set, choose one of the **channels** and have a fun.

But books still play an important role in our life. They are the source of information, knowledge and relaxation. So, as proverb says, "Live and learn".

a journalist [ˈdʒɜːnəlɪst] журналист

a reporter [rɪˈpɔːtə] репортер

a correspondent [ˌkɒrɪs-
ˈpɒndənt] кореспондент

long time ago – давно
while [waɪl] у той час, як;
тим часом

to switch [swɪtʃ]

to switch on – ввімкнути

to switch off – вимкнути

to switch over (+from/to)

– переключити з/на ...

a channel [ˈtʃænl] канал

2. Listening.

a) Look at the pictures and listen to Eugene's story. Say which pictures the boy is talking about.



b) Listen to Eugene's story again. Write down the words the boy uses in his report into your exercise-book.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> to watch | <input type="checkbox"/> a radio | <input type="checkbox"/> to switch off |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a book | <input type="checkbox"/> a TV set | <input type="checkbox"/> a horror film |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a programme | <input type="checkbox"/> a newspaper | <input type="checkbox"/> a drama |
| <input type="checkbox"/> to broadcast | <input type="checkbox"/> a computer | <input type="checkbox"/> to listen |
| <input type="checkbox"/> an article | <input type="checkbox"/> Internet | <input type="checkbox"/> a discovery |

c) Speaking skills. Talk about Eugene's story. What are your favourite radio stations and TV channels?

3. Read the text and say what it deals with. Talk about communications in your life. Say if you have got any of them.

People have to admit the important role of the telecommunications in our life. The Internet, phones, telegraph, mobile phones, radio, television, satellite television, video cell phones are all the means of communication. It's a fact that we live in an information era, when information is the key and engine of progress. Means of information always develop. Could you imagine 10 years ago that most of Ukrainians would have mobile phones and Internet at home? New technologies in electronics continue to develop. Computers become more compact and faster. Some programmers say, "As soon as you take your new computer into the street from a shop, it becomes out of date".

Could you imagine the future development of the means of communications? Nowadays scientists of the countries all over the world work on solving problems of energy saving and pollution of the environment. They think about new technologies.

There is no doubt the communications will be changed. Today they change our world. Maybe tomorrow they will change us. Who knows?

4. Speaking skills. Answer the questions and talk about mass media.

- 1) What sources of information do you know?
- 2) Which means of mass media are the oldest (the youngest) ones?
- 3) How often do you read newspapers and magazines?
- 4) Where do you take them?
- 5) Do you subscribe to any magazines or newspapers?
- 6) What do you usually read in magazines and newspapers?
- 7) Do you like to listen to the radio?
- 8) Do you prefer listening to music on radio or on audio player?
- 9) Where do you learn news – listen to radio, watch on TV or read in the Internet?
- 10) Do you often watch TV?
- 11) What programmes do you watch on TV?
- 12) What channels do you have at home?
- 13) What radio stations do you know?
- 14) What magazines do you know?
- 15) What newspapers do you know?

5. a) Work in pairs. Read and act out the dialogues.

- Why are you switching on the radio?
 - Shall we listen to the 7 o'clock news?
 - Isn't it too early for that now?
 - Of course not. It's already three to 7.
 - Oh! Don't switch over from this radio-wave! It's my favourite song!
 - We'll miss the news.
 - OK. Switch over to Europe Plus. Let's listen to the news.
-

- Mum! What are you reading?
 - Cannot you see? It's a newspaper "Misto".
 - I mean what you are reading about.
 - Sorry. I'm reading a TV-programme.
 - Is there a football match on TV?
 - Yes, there is. At half past 9.
 - How many films are there this evening?
 - And what kind of films would you like to see?
 - You know. I am fond of super-films.
 - Let me see. There are two or three good films. Take the newspaper. I have already read it. By the way, there is an interesting article about your favourite football team on page six there.
 - Thank you. It's great!
-

- Hullo, Oleh. It's Ben from your father's work.
- Good evening, Ben. How are you?
- Thank you, fine. And you?
- So am I. Thank you.
- Is your father at home?
- Yes, he is. Dad is watching TV.
- What's on?
- It's 8 o'clock. The news are broadcasted as usual.
- H'm! And what's the news?
- "Dynamo" won Champion's League.
- Really?
- Are you serious? It's a joke.
- It's a pity. OK. Call your dad, please.

b) Make and act out the dialogues using the sentences given on page 100.

What's on TV (on radio) tonight?

I'd like to listen/to watch a TV programme.

When do they broadcast the news / announce the weather?

What's the running time of this programme? (Скільки часу відведено на цю програму?)

Switch on/off the radio/TV, please.

Switch over to another channel, please.

There's going to be a new film on channel 3.

Turn up/down the volume, will you? (Зробіть звук гучніше/тихіше, будь ласка.)

It's about time for a live transmission of a boxing match.
(Скоро почнеться прямий ефір боксерського матчу.)

Please, regulate the contrast/volume/picture brightness.

6. a) Read and match the words and their meanings to complete the sentences*.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1) A journalist ... | a) reports news from a particular area or on a particular subject. |
| 2) A reporter ... | b) writes news reports for newspapers, magazines, television or radio. |
| 3) A correspondent ... | c) introduces the different parts of television or radio shows. |
| 4) A newsreader
(a newscaster) ... | d) writes about events for a newspaper, radio or television. |
| 5) A sportscaster ... | e) tells us what the weather will be like. |
| 6) A presenter ... | f) reads the news on radio or television. |
| 7) A weatherforecaster ... | g) comments on television broadcasts of sports matches. |

b) Change the sentences into Passive Voice.

c) Say if you want to work on TV (in a newspaper, on radio).
What do you want to be in the future?

7. Write a report "Reading Newspapers". Use in it one of the sayings given below.

A newspaper should be the maximum of information and the minimum of comment.

Cobden

У газеті повинно бути максимум інформації і мінімум пояснень.

Кобден

*Check yourself: 1-b; 2-d; 3-a; 4-f; 5-g; 6-c; 7-e.

<i>Newspapers are world's mirrors.</i> Anonymous	Газети — дзеркала світу. Невідомий автор
<i>A good newspaper is a nation talking to itself.</i> Miller	Через гарну газету спілкується нація. Міллер

8. Speaking skills. Talk about the news you have heard on radio/on TV or have read in a newspaper/magazine recently.

For example:

- P₁:** What's the news? Who can tell me?
- P₂:** May I say a few words about the latest sports news? I have read in a newspaper "Sports Express" that Volodymyr Klychko is going to box with a Russian boxer Nikolay Valuiev. Their match will take place in June.
- P₃:** Let me say a few words about the economic news. My father and me watched the news on TV yesterday. And I have heard that Ukrainian government will abate a value added tax to support small private producers.
- P₄:** May I say? I'm not keen on politics and economics. I'd like to tell you the latest music news. I have heard on radio that Vitaliy Kozlovsky and Ani Lorak are going to sing in a duet in a charity concert in Kyiv. And so on.

II. Grammar Section

Modal structures: to be allowed to, to let/ make smb do

Revision: Modal Verbs can, may, must, to have

Vocabulary

a modal verb – модальне дієслово

a meaning – значення

an infinitive – інфінітив

a participle – дієприкметник

a particle – частка

an ending – закінчення

the third person – 3-я особа

singular – однина

present/past tense – теперішній/ минулий час

an interrogative/negative form – питальна/заперечна форма

1. **Revision:** a) Read the sentences and say what you (your friends, the members of your family) can and cannot do well. What couldn't you do some years ago but can do now?

CAN (COULD)

I **can** sing. You **can** ski. He **can** play the piano. We **can** write.

I **can** dance well because I go to the dancing school.

My sister **cannot** read because she is three.

He **could** buy running shoes there *the day before yesterday*.

I **couldn't** play chess last year. I **could** play football *yesterday*.

Could you lift this weight *five years ago*?

What **can** you do? **Can** your friend do it?

b) Work in pairs. Make up and act out the dialogues using the following scheme. What's the meaning of the verb **could** in these sentences?

P₁: Could you	help me, please? break a fifty dollar bill? open the window, please? tell me the time, please? close the window, please? hold it in a moment, please? give me a newspaper, please?	P₂: Yes, of course. Certainly. With pleasure. Sure. Sorry, I can't. I'm afraid, I can't.
--	--	---

P₁: Thank you very much. Thank you for the help. I am very grateful to you. You are very kind.	P₂: You are welcome. Not at all. Don't mention it.
---	--

c) Read the mini-dialogues. Say what the meanings of the verbs **may** and **could** are in these dialogues. Make up three dialogues with the modal verbs **may** and **could**.

— Excuse me. May my son sit here?	— Excuse, me. May I cross the street here?
— Of course, he may .	— I'm afraid, you may not .
— Sorry, could I ask you a question?	— Go down the street.
— Please, do.	— There is an underpass at the corner.
— Does this bus go to Hyde Park?	— You are very kind. Thanks.
— Yes, it does.	— You are welcome.
— Thank you.	
— Not at all.	

d) Read the sentences and say what you must and must not do at school. What do you have to do after classes today?

MUST

I **must** go to school on Monday because it is a working day.

We **must** help old people. He **must** be at school on time.

Must I write down this text? – You **don't have to** write it.

Must Mary water the flowers every day? – No, she **needn't**.

You **must not** talk aloud in the reading-hall.

TO HAVE TO (HAD TO)

I **have to** go because I have a tennis coaching in half an hour.

We **have to** play basketball in a gymnasium because it is raining.

He **has to** get up at six o'clock because he does his morning exercises before classes every day.

She **had to** train hard because she wanted to win the competition.

Do we **have to** ski there? **Does** he **have to** go to bed early?

Did he **have to** compete against Oleh yesterday? – Yes, he did.

Do we **have to** wait for her? – Yes, you do. / No, you don't.

I **don't have to** read English books, but I want to do it.

She **didn't have to** take part in that contest.

e) Read and complete the sentences. Say what the meaning of the verb **should** is in these dialogues.

SHOULD

You **should** go in for jogging in the mornings.

We **should** do our morning exercises if we want to keep fit.

If he wants to be polite, he **should** ...

If you want to be strong, you **should** ...

If they want to be clever, they **should** ...

If I want to have friends, I **should** ...

2. Answer the questions and tell your teacher about modal verbs. Make up the table "Modal verbs: the interrogative and negative forms". Give your examples.

- 1) Which verbs are called modal verbs?
- 2) Are modal verbs followed by the infinitive with the particle **to**?
- 3) Do modal verbs have the ending **-(e)s** in the third person singular of the present tense?

3. Read and complete the sentences with modal verbs. Make up and act out the dialogue with one of these sentences.

- 1) I see you have some problems. _____ I help you?
- 2) Knock-knock! I am sorry, I am late. _____ I come in?
- 3) Children _____ play on the road because there are many cars there.
- 4) He did that exercise last week. _____ he do it again?
- 5) My sister _____ read newspapers because she is five.
- 6) Boys cleaned the flat and did their homework so they _____ watch a live transmission of a football match on TV.
- 7) The weather is fine therefore we _____ walk in the garden.
- 8) The weather is bad and it's raining hard, that's why the children _____ play tennis.
- 9) You _____ listen to the teacher attentively at the lessons.
- 10) _____ you tell me about your family, please?
- 11) Sorry, how _____ we get the Lesia Ukrainka Museum?
- 12) We _____ travel by car to the USA.
- 13) They _____ cancel the tennis match yesterday because it was hailing.
- 14) He _____ buy a new TV set because his old one is broken.
- 15) You _____ go in for sport if you want to be healthy.

4. Read the structures and the sentences and make up 10 more sentences.



MAKE (past – *made*)

His parents **make** *him* do his morning exercises every day.
I **made** *my dog* bark. He **made** *his dog* jump. She **made** *her dog* sit.
You **made** *your dog* lie. They **made** *their dog* run.
They **make** *me* eat four times a day.
He **makes** *her* go to bed at 9 o'clock.
Our mum **made** *us* change our clothes because they were wet.
Our dad **doesn't make** *us* read newspapers.
Did he **make** *you* watch educational programmes on TV?
We **didn't make** *them* work on computer.
Do your parents **make** *you* go jogging in the evenings?

LET (past – *let*)

They **let** *me* go home because I felt unwell.
The teacher always **lets** *his pupils* express their opinions.
His granny **let** *him* eat a cake.
I **let** *my cat* sleep in an armchair. I **don't let** *it* sleep in my bed.
My brother **didn't let** *me* take his radio.
Do you **let** *me* play with you? I can stand in the gateway. – He asked them if they **let** *him* play with them.
Did their trainer **let** *them* play tennis yesterday?

FORBID (past – *forbade* / past participle *forbidden*)

ALLOW (past – *allowed* / past participle *allowed*)

My parents **forbid** *me* to listen to the radio while I do my homework.
Our teacher **forbids** *us* to use textbook while we write tests.
He **doesn't forbid** *us* to use dictionaries at our English lessons.
I **am forbidden** to read books after 10 o'clock in the evenings.
She **is forbidden** to watch TV today because she has got a bad mark.
We **were forbidden** to watch horror films last year.
It is forbidden to cross the street there.
Her mother **forbade** *her* to leave the house.
I **allow** *my sister* to read my magazines.
A laptop **allows** *us* to work with our files, watch films, listen to music anywhere we want – in a park, in a train, at a library, etc.
Our grandfather **doesn't allow** *us* to eat a lot of hamburgers.
They **didn't allow** *me* to go to the river.
My parents **allowed** *me* to celebrate last New Year.
I **am allowed** to skate in the skating-rink.

He **is allowed to stay** at the table **and watch TV** at New Year's night.
 We **were allowed to go to the cinema** the day before yesterday.

5. a) Make up some sentences using the table. Add adverbial modifiers of time such as **usually, sometimes, always, today, yesterday, three days ago**, etc.
 b) Make the interrogative and negative sentences.
 c) Change the sentences into the Passive Voice using the structures **to be forbidden, to be allowed**.

Example:

They **made me stay** in bed. - I **was made to stay** in bed.
 We **let him play football**. - He **is allowed to play football**.

I	make		me	write an essay about mass media.
You	made		you	read the article in a newspaper.
He	let		you	go to the cinema.
She	forbid	(to)	him	play football on the road.
We	forbade		her	watch the film on TV.
They	allow		us	correct our mistakes.
His parents	allowed		them	listen to the radio. buy magazines about sport.

6. Paraphrase the following sentences using:

a) **can/could:**

- 1) You have the right to listen to the radio stations you like.
- 2) He knows how to write articles for newspaper.
- 3) I know how to ski well.
- 4) They had the right to go to the theatre last year.
- 5) Will you allow us to go to the football match?
- 6) Will you allow me to take your player?
- 7) You haven't the right to phone during the lesson.
- 8) She doesn't know how to shoot films.
- 9) I don't know how to switch over to another channel.
- 10) We didn't know how to write English essays five years ago.

b) **may/might:**

- 1) We are allowed to read newspapers, magazines and books at a school library on Sundays.

- 2) Olenka asked her friend if she was allowed to take his magazine.
- 3) My parents forbid me to talk to strangers in a chat.
- 4) It is forbidden to eat pop-corn and drink Coca-Cola at the theatre.
- 5) Is Andriy allowed to go to the Internet club?
- 6) Are girls allowed to attend a sport club?
- 7) My little sister said that our grandfather allowed her to watch cartoons on TV.

c) have to/had to:

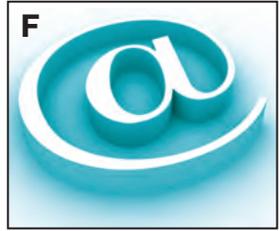
- 1) Was it necessary for you to take a part in this concert?
- 2) I must buy a new radio because my old one is broken.
- 3) How many times a week was it necessary for him to read English newspapers?
- 4) Must children go in for sport?
- 5) It isn't necessary for us to go to the football match.
- 6) Our trainer must not show us this exercise again.
- 7) It was necessary for him to write English dictation every day last year.

d) should:

- 1) I advise you to play indoor games every day.
- 2) We don't advise him to watch a lot of horror films.
- 3) My mum thinks I must listen to the news every evening.
- 4) It's a pity you get a bad mark at your English lesson.
- 5) Do you think Oleh must learn to work with Internet?
- 6) I don't think my sister must play football.
- 7) I think you must read articles in English newspapers, listen to the English-speaking radio stations and watch such English channels as Discovery, BBC and Animal Planet on TV every day if you want to speak English well.

- 7.** Look at the pictures, match them with the words and write a sentence about each invention using *allow*, *let*. You are allowed to use dictionaries.





A fax machine, e-mail, a radio, a television set, a mobile phone, the Internet.

For example:

Computers allow us to store information, work with different documents, watch films, change pictures and photos, draw schemes and graphs and so on.

8. Listening.

a) Listen to the text.

b) Answer the questions.

If you see the icon choose the correct item A, B, C or D.

If you see the icon say if the sentences are true or false.

c) Retell the text. Say if you go to any Internet club. Are you allowed play computer games? Can you work on computer?

- 1) How many rooms are there in the Internet Club?
 - a) two ;
 - b) three ;
 - c) four;
 - d) five.
- 2) The first room is for those who like to play computer games, isn't it?
- 3) What games are not played in the club?
 - a) outdoor games;
 - b) on-line games;
 - c) computer games;
 - d) team games.
- 4) Children are forbidden to play computer games in this club, aren't they?
- 5) What can you do in the second room?
 - a) send messages by e-mail;
 - b) watch films;
 - c) play computer games;
 - d) listen to the radio.
- 6) You are allowed to drink tea in the second room, aren't you?

About 90% of all radio programmes in the US provide entertainment and only 10% provide some kind of information. Music is the **chief** kind of radio entertainment. Usually, stations **specialize** in one kind of music such as rock, classical, country, etc. Such stations have **disc jockeys** who introduce and comment on the music.



Programmes that provide information include **newscasts**, **talk shows** and descriptions of sport events. Newscasts may include **weather forecasts**, **traffic reports**, **stock market** information. Talk shows present discussions on current political topics such as an **election** or **government policy** or on a **social issue**, such as crime, pollution, poverty, etc. Each show has a **host** or **hostess** who leads the discussion. Listeners are invited to telephone the stations to ask question or give their opinion about the topic.

Television

Television, also called TV, is one of the most popular and important means of communication.

Most of the TV stations broadcast mostly entertainment programmes because they must **attract** larger numbers of viewers in order to sell **advertising time** at high prices. These programmes include **light dramas** called **situation comedies**; **actionpacked** dramas about life of detectives or doctors; shows **featuring** comedians, dancers and singers: **reality shows**; **movies**; **quiz shows**; **soap operas**; **cartoons**. They also broadcast **documentaries** and **talk shows**. Documentaries are dramatic, but nonfictional presentation of information. These can be programmes about people and animals in **faraway** places or programmes on such **issues** as alcoholism, drugs, etc. On talk shows a host **interviews** politicians, TV and movie stars, athletes, authors. There are also sport programmes and **brief summaries** of local, national and international news. Advertising is an important part of modern TV because the most stations are **profit**.



There are some TV **channels** that specialize in one subject – sport, science, music, education, politics, culture, history, geography, animals, etc. Some channels broadcast only movies or cartoons.

c) Choose the mass media you want to represent in your class. Work in four groups to prepare some interesting tasks for your friends.

Compulsory tasks

2. Prepare a speech about your topic. Tell your classmates about the advantages of the means of communication you have chosen. What role does it play in our life?

To make your speech more interesting and expressive you can prepare some questions for your classmates, use proverbs and aphorisms, give some facts and statistics and illustrate your speech with pictures, photos or copies of magazines and newspapers.

3. Give some interesting facts about the history of development of newspapers (magazines, radio or TV). Start with the sentence: **It is interesting to know that ...** Ask your classmates what fact was the most interesting for them.

4. Write an essay “Professions” about the process of creation of newspapers (magazines, radio or TV programmes).

5. Make up a quiz about different professions.

Ask your friends:

a) to complete the sentences choosing the correct item A, B, C or D.

For example: A journalist is someone who ____ .

- A. writes news reports for newspapers, magazines, television or radio;
- B. writes about events for a newspaper, radio or television;
- C. is employed by a newspaper or a television station to report news from a particular area or on a particular subject;
- D. answer the readers’ letters.

b) to say if the sentences you are reading are true or false. Prepare red and green cards for them. If the fact is true, your classmates should raise a green card. If it is false, they must raise a red one.

6. Make a survey of the newspapers (magazines, FM stations, TV-programmes) which are popular in your native place.

7. Make up your own newspaper/magazine or prepare a radio/TV programme.
8. Imagine that you are an editor-in-chief of one of the newspapers (magazines, radio stations, TV channels). Give an interview to your classmates: answer to their questions.

IV. Reading

1. Before you start reading, answer the questions given below:
 - 1) What Ukrainian newspapers do you know?
 - 2) What kind of information do they provide?
 - 3) What Ukrainian newspapers are published in English?
 - 4) Do you read newspapers?
 - 5) What newspapers do you read?
 - 6) How do you get them?
 - 7) How often do you read newspapers?
 - 8) What sections in newspapers do you like most of all?
 - 9) Do you keep old newspapers with interesting articles at home?
 - 10) Is the newspaper the most important source of information about current news in your opinion?
2. Read the article from **“Kyiv Post”** and tell your teacher what it deals with.

KYIV POST
Independence. Community. Trust.

UKRAINE, A MAJOR ENERGY TRANSPORTER?

The geographic position of Ukraine makes it a perfect route for energy transit from Russia and the Caspian region to the world markets.

According to the International Energy Agency, 3.9 trillion cubic feet of Russian gas was shipped through Ukraine to Europe last year. The same year Ukraine transported 46.7 million tons of oil to the world markets. Such a volume of energy transit makes Ukraine the world's most important hydrocarbon transporting country.

Ukraine sees its energy transit infrastructure as a key strategic asset. However, whether Ukraine will be able to remain the major

energy transporter in the future is not certain. Energy transit through Ukraine has fallen.

The Energy Information Administration reported that Russian oil transits through Ukraine in 2006 dropped 15 per cent compared to 2005. As for gas shipments, in 2007, Ukraine transited 7.7 billion cubic meters less to Europe compared to 2006. There was an 18 per cent fall in Russian gas transit in 2008 compared to 2007.

The problem with Ukraine's status as the world's most important energy transporter is connected with its future energy transit volumes.

First, after some conflicts with Ukraine, Russia began to look for ways to diversify its oil and gas export routes.

North European Gas Pipeline (Nordstream), a \$5.7 billion project that will bring Russian gas to Western Europe along the Baltic seabed totally bypassing Ukraine and other transit states, is expected to bring about 1 trillion cubic feet to Western Europe in 2010. So it will reduce Russian gas exports through Ukraine.

Another project, a \$2.5 billion pipeline from the Belarus border to the Russian port of Primorsk (Baltic Pipeline System-2) could end oil shipments through the Druzhba pipeline, which exports Russian oil through Ukraine. But because of high costs, the successful completion of the above projects remains to be seen.

The second problem for Ukraine can come from Europe. The International Energy Agency reports that about 35 per cent of gas imports of European countries come from Russia. According to the Energy Information Administration, Europe's dependence on Russian oil grew from 9 per cent in 1995 to about 25 per cent in 2009. It is expected that the EU will be 70 per cent dependent on Russian energy by 2030.

Recently, European states have worked on diversification of their energy supply. They look for new oil and gas suppliers, but also have started examining the possibility of increasing LNG (liquefied natural gas) consumption. The more Europe shifts to LNG, the less important a role Ukraine will play in energy markets in the future, since its gas transit infrastructure is not suitable for LNG shipments.

The third problem with energy transit volumes lies within Ukraine itself. Most of the gas and oil transit network in Ukraine is old and need of renovation or replacement. More than 60 per cent of its gas pipelines have been in use for 10-33 years. Oil pipelines have been in use for 20-44 years and up to 90 per cent of them are outdated. This hurts Ukraine's reputation as a good energy conveyer.

All the reasons listed above make Ukraine's future position as energy transporter not as strong as it was.

However, some experts present a counterargument to the problem of energy transit volumes through Ukraine. They argue that in the near future even after increasing the share of non-Russian energy supplies and LNG consumption, European consumers will have to increase Russian energy imports. As a result, Ukraine will still be an important transporter of Russian energy to Europe.

The question becomes: What can Ukraine do to maintain its position as a leading transporting state? We see three possibilities here.

First, it is important that Ukraine improves its energy transportation system.

Second, Ukraine should increase transit of non-Russian energy through its territory. This can be achieved by the construction of the Odesa-Brody pipeline extension to Western Europe and the contracts with Caspian oil producers.

Third and most importantly Ukraine needs to develop an LNG-supporting infrastructure. If Europe increases its consumption of LNG, it would be an advantage to have an LNG terminal, for example, in the Odesa port. This will allow Ukraine to receive LNG (for example, from Egypt), turn it into gas and ship it to Europe using its existing pipeline network. This will allow Ukraine to find new producers willing to ship gas through its transportation network.

by Yadviga Semikolenova

3. Choose the correct item A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

- 1) According to the International Energy Agency, 3.9 trillion cubic feet _____ was shipped through Ukraine to Europe last year.
A. of Ukrainian gas C. of Russian oil
B. of Russian gas D. of Kazakh gas
- 2) The Energy Information Administration reported that Russian gas transits through Ukraine in 2007 _____ compared to 2006.
A. dropped 7.7 billion m³ C. dropped 18 per cent
B. increased by 15 per cent D. dropped 15 per cent
- 3) The Ukrainian gas and oil transporting infrastructure is extremely ineffective because _____ .
A. most of our gas and oil transit network is old
B. the costs of transporting is very high

- D. Ukrainian gas and oil pipelines can transport only fuel of good quality
 - C. 40 per cent of Ukrainian pipelines are outdated.
- 4) To be the world's major energy transporter in the future Ukraine should increase transit of ___ through its territory.
- A. Russian energy
 - B. Kazakh gas
 - C. non-Russian energy
 - D. Ukrainian gas and oil
- 5) The most important step that Ukraine should do to be the most important energy transporter in the future is ___ .
- A. to develop an LNG-supporting infrastructure
 - B. to shift to liquefied natural gas
 - C. to improve its energy transportation system
 - D. to complete the construction of the Odesa-Brody pipeline.

4. Say if the following sentences are true (T) or false (F).

- 1) The geographic position of Ukraine makes it a perfect route for energy transit from Russia and the Caspian region to the world markets.
- 2) Russia looks for ways to diversify its oil and gas export routes.
- 3) European countries heavily depend on Russian energy supplies.
- 4) The possibility of increasing LNG consumption is examined in Europe nowadays.
- 5) More than 60 per cent of Ukrainian oil pipelines have been in use for 10-33 years.
- 6) Ukraine's future position as energy transporter is very strong.
- 7) It is important that Ukraine improves the efficiency of its energy transportation system.
- 8) The Odesa-Brody pipeline were constructed 5 years ago.
- 9) It is connected to the Russian pipelines.
- 10) To be the world's major energy transporter in the future Ukraine needs to develop an LNG-supporting infrastructure.

5. Make the plan of the text.

6. Retell the text using the sentences given below.

I have read the article under the title ... It is about ... (It deals with ...)
 I have learnt that ... It was interesting to learn ... The fact is that ...
 it's a fact/that's a fact.

7. Discuss the article: what kind of news does it inform you of? Are there any facts in the article? Does the author of the article give her comments and analysis of facts? What do you know about Ukraine as an energy transporting country?

V. Writing

1. a) Work in pairs: dictate and write down the words that you've learnt during your previous lessons. Make up sentences with them. If you don't know how to write the word, ask your friend to spell it.
b) Write an essay (not more than 16 sentences) about mass media.

2. Complete the sentences with one of modal verbs or modal structures and write them.

1. I ... not speak English seven years ago but now I do it rather well.
2. My little sister is only four and a half, but she ... already read and write a little. 3. ... I help you? 4. ... I say a few words about history of television? 5. Spectators ... not take their coats with themselves to the auditorium. You ... leave them in the cloakroom. 6. I ... to listen to the news because I need to write the report on political situation in Ukraine. 7. I ... tell you about mass media in Ukraine. ... I write down my report? – No, you needn't. 8. My mother doesn't ... my little brother to watch TV more than an hour a day. 9. She was ill and her parents ... her stay in bed. 10. We are ... to listen to the radio during a break at school. 11. ... Olenka tell us about the film she watched on TV yesterday. 12. Our teacher ... us to talk in Ukrainian at our English lessons. We ... speak English to each other if we want to speak English well.

3. Fill in the blanks with the right form of the modal structure in the brackets. Then change the sentences into the Passive Voice.

1. My grandmother didn't (*to allow*) me to swim in a river alone five years ago. 2. Our teacher (*to let*) us use dictionaries when we write essays. 3. I (*to make*) my little sister wash her hands before eating. 4. They (*to forbid*) children under 18 to watch this film. 5. Your parents (*to forbid*) you to play computer games because you had to do your homework.

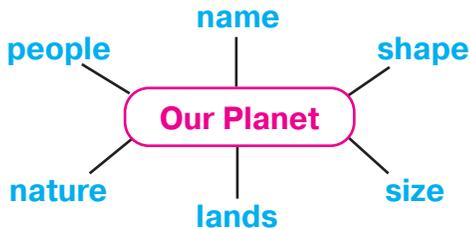
4. Write interrogative and negative sentences with modal verbs and structures you know.
5. Work in pairs. Write and act out the dialogue using modal verbs.
6. **Writing an article.** Read the information and write the article for a magazine “World around us”.

As you know an article is a piece of writing about a subject in a newspaper or magazine.

Let’s write the article for a magazine.

Step 1. Choose the topic that interests you. For example, “Our Planet”.

Step 2. Write your topic in the centre of a sheet. Draw some lines around the topic and write what you know about our planet.



Step 3. Imagine that you want to talk about our planet with your friends. Write the questions to them:

- 1) What is our planet’s name?
- 2) What does it look like? Why is our planet round?
- 3) How big is the Earth? And so on.

Step 4. Use each question as a topic sentence. Find facts that answer them. Take notes and use your notes as supporting details.

Step 5. Find some photos to make your article more interesting.

Step 6. Imagine that you tell your friends about the Earth and write your speech. Use rhetorical questions in your article:

Dear Friends,

Let’s talk about our planet. You know its name is the Earth.

What does it look like? Look at the globe! It is round. Why is the world round? The world is round for the same reason that a raindrop and a bubble are round. A liquid naturally shapes itself into a ball. This happens if the liquid is falling through the air, like a raindrop or floating like a bubble. When the Earth formed about 4,600 million years ago, it was hot and liquid. Because it was floating in space, it became round. When the liquid rock cooled and hardened into solid rock, the Earth stayed round.

Step 7. Check your article, add a title and glue or draw pictures.

Step 8. Add a signature:

by Olena Khmelyck, the 10th form

7. Internet Skills. Come to www.thebigproject.co.uk/news
Here you can read the newspapers (online versions) of all the world: Great Britain, all European countries (in English and original languages), the USA, etc. Can you think of any more Ukrainian newspapers?

The UK

- ⓪ BBC News
- ⓪ Sky News
- ⓪ BBC 'On This Day'
- ⓪ ITN
- ⓪ NewsNow CNN
- ⓪ Reuters
- ⓪ Times
- ⓪ The Guardian
- ⓪ Observer
- ⓪ Independent
- ⓪ Sunday Times
- ⓪ Daily Telegraph
- ⓪ Financial Times
- ⓪ Daily Express
- ⓪ Daily Mail
- ⓪ Daily Mirror
- ⓪ Sunday Mirror
- ⓪ Daily Star

Russia

- ⓪ Moscow Times
- ⓪ Russia Post
- ⓪ Pravda
- ⓪ Tass
- ⓪ Russia Today

Ukraine

- ⓪ Kyiv Post

the USA

- ⓪ Boston Globe
- ⓪ Chicago Tribune
- ⓪ Dallas Morning News
- ⓪ Los Angeles Times
- ⓪ Miami Herald
- ⓪ Minneapolis Star Tribune
- ⓪ NBC
- ⓪ New York Daily News
- ⓪ New York Post

V. Time for Fun

1. Almost all the newspapers and magazines contain a section for funny stories, anecdotes, jokes, etc. They can be both real and made-up stories. Read some of them, act out one that you like and tell your friends your own jokes.

A little girl was watching her mother spread cold cream over her face. "What's it for, Mummy?" she asked. "That's to make me beautiful, darling," replied the mother. The little girl watched in silence

until the mother began to remove the cream. Then, in a tone of sadness, she whispered, "It didn't work, did it?"

Nick with his father went to see Grandmother. In the train Nick every minute put his head out of the window. His father said, "Nick, keep quite. Don't put your head out of the window!"

But Nick went on doing it.

Here his father took Nick's cap quietly, hid it behind his back and said, "You see, your cap has flown." Nick began to cry. Then his father said, "Well, whistle once! Perhaps, your cap will come back."

Nick came up to the window and whistled. Nick's father put quickly the cap on Nick's head.

Oh! It was wonderful. Nick was very pleased. He took quickly his father's cap and threw it out of the window. "Now it is your turn to whistle, Dad!" he said with a smile.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN

(1706-1790), American statesman, diplomat, philosopher

Once Benjamin Franklin was invited to a meeting of a literary society in Paris. But when it was time to leave for the meeting, there was nobody at home to look after his little grandson. So Franklin took the boy with him and the child was very pleased to go with his grandfather. Franklin did not understand French very well, but he wanted to be polite, so he decided to clap whenever the French lady, who was sitting between his grandson and himself, looked pleased and clapped. When the meeting was over, Franklin's little grandson, who knew French better than his grandfather, said, "But grandfather, you always clapped louder than anybody else when they were speaking of you."

HOMEWORK

1. Write an essay about sources of information in our life.
2. Listen to the news on radio or TV and take the notes. Tell your friends about the news. Start with: **There is the news that ...**
3. Make a survey of any newspaper or magazine that you have got at home. What information is printed on each page?

4. Find some interesting facts about mass media. Start your report with the sentence: **It is a fact that ...**
5. Find in any English newspaper or magazine 10 sentences with modal verbs or structures. Make the negative and interrogative forms of them.
6. Write 10 sentences what you are forbidden and allowed to do.
7. Prepare your project works (read the tasks on pages 112-113).
8. Find any newspaper article in English and tell your friends what it deals with.
9. Write a short article to your school newspaper about any event that has happened in your city lately. Use the sentence in the Passive Voice in the title.

For examples:

Ten so-called “lying policemen” were installed near schools

A town council has installed “lying policemen” before all zebra crossing near schools in the center of the town.

They expect the step can secure our school-children.

So-called “lying policemen” are used in many countries of the world: France, Belgium, the USA, Great Britain, Egypt, etc. They look like low lying-walls that make drivers reduce speed.

All lying-policemen are accompanied by warning road signs.



10. **Project work.** Write an article about any of your school events (cultural, sport) or information about your studies (statistics, diagram, plans, etc.) for the magazine “Our school’s life”.

Home Reading

1. Read the continuation of the story “Problem at Pollensa Bay” by Agatha Christie and look up new words in a dictionary.

Mr. Parker Pyne spent a very enjoyable week at Seller.

On his return he found that a totally unexpected development had arisen.

As he entered the Pino d'Oro the first thing he saw was Mrs. Chester and Betty Gregg having tea together. Basil was not there.

They greeted him in a friendly fashion, but neither of them mentioned Basil.

Suddenly he heard the girl beside him. Mr. Parker Pyne turned his head. Basil Chester was coming up the steps from the sea front. With him was a girl so exotically beautiful that it quite took your breath away. She was dark and her figure was marvellous. She wore nothing but a single garment of pale blue crepe. She was heavily made up with ochre powder and an orange scarlet mouth. As for young Basil, he couldn't take his eyes from her face.

"You're very late, Basil," said his mother. "You had to take Betty to Mac's."

"My fault," said the beautiful unknown. She turned to Basil. "Angel - get me something with alcohol in it!"

She tossed off her shoe and stretched out her manicured toenails which were done green to match her fingernails.

She paid no attention to the two women, but she talked a little to Mr. Parker Pyne.

"Terrible island this," she said. "But Basil is rather a pet!"

"Mr. Parker Pyne - Miss Ramona," said Mrs. Chester.

The girl said with a lazy smile.

"I'll call you Parker. My name's Dolores."

Basil returned with the drinks..

Suddenly Dolores rose.

"Guess I'll be going along now. I'm at the other hotel. Anyone coming to see me home?"

Basil sprang up.

"I'll come with you."

Mrs. Chester said: "Basil, my dear - "

"I'll be back presently, Mother."

"Isn't he the mother's boy?" Miss Ramona asked.

Basil flushed and looked awkward. Miss Ramona gave a nod in Mrs. Chester's direction, a smile to Mr. Parker Pyne and she and Basil moved off together.

After they had gone there was a silence. Mr. Parker Pyne did not like to speak first.

Betty Gregg was looking out to sea. Mrs. Chester looked angry. Betty said: "Well, what do you think of our new friend in Pollensa Bay?" Her voice was not quite steady.

Mr. Parker Pyne said:

"A little - er - exotic."

"Exotic?" Betty gave a short laugh.

Mrs. Chester said: "She's terrible - terrible. Basil must be quite mad.

Betty said sharply: "Basil's all right. I think, Mrs. Chester, I'll go home and not stay to dinner after all."

"Oh, my dear - Basil will be so disappointed."

"Will he?" asked Betty with a short laugh. "Anyway, I think I will. I've got a headache."

She smiled at them both and went off. Mrs. Chester turned to Mr. Parker Pyne.

"I wish we had never come to this place - never!"

"Well," said Mr. Parker Pyne, "this new attraction seems to have broken his feelings to Miss Gregg."

"I don't know what you mean," said Mrs. Chester. "Betty is a dear child. She is behaving extremely well over this. I think my boy must be mad. That Miss Ramona! She's impossible."

"But extremely good-looking."

Basil ran up the steps from the sea front.

"Hullo, Mater, here I am. Where's Betty?"

"Betty's gone home with a headache. Basil, you are unkind to Betty."

"For God's sake, Mother! If Betty is going to make a fuss every time I speak to another girl a nice sort of life we'll lead together."

He paused.

"Look here, if Betty isn't going to dine with us - I think I'll go back to the Mariposa. They did ask me to dine..."

"Oh, Basil - You see," she said.

He saw.

Matters came to a head a couple of days later. Betty and Basil were to have gone for a long walk, taking a picnic lunch with them. Betty arrived at the Pino d'Oro to find that Basil had forgotten the plan and gone for the Dolores Ramona's party.

"It's quite all right," she said. "It doesn't matter."

She slipped from her finger the ring that Basil had given her.

"Will you give him back it, Mrs Chester? And tell him it's all right - not to worry..."

“Betty, dear, don’t! He does love you - really.”

“It looks like it, doesn’t it?” said the girl with a short laugh. “No - I’ve got some pride. Tell him everything’s all right and that I - I wish him luck.”

When Basil returned at sunset he was greeted by a storm.

After all Basil said:

“I don’t see that it was my fault. You begged me yourself not to marry Betty.”

“That was before I knew her. Basil - my dear - you are not thinking of marrying this other creature.”

Basil Chester said:

“I’d like to marry ... but I’m afraid she won’t.”

She found Mr. Parker Pyne, reading a book in a corner.

“You must do something! You must do something! My boy’s life will be ruined.”

Mr. Parker Pyne was getting a little tired of Basil Chester’s life being ruined.

“What can I do?”

“Go and see this terrible creature. If necessary buy her off.”

“It may come very expensive.”

“I don’t care.”

“It is a pity. There are, possibly, other ways”.

She looked a question. He shook his head.

“I’ll make no promises - but I’ll see what I can do.”...

Mr. Parker Pyne returned from the Mariposa at midnight. Mrs. Chester was sitting up for him.

“Well?” she asked.

“The Senorita Dolores Ramona will leave Pollensa tomorrow morning and the island tomorrow night.”

“Oh, Mr. Parker Pyne! How did you manage it?”

“It won’t cost a cent,” said Mr. Parker Pyne.

“You are wonderful. Nina Wycherley was quite right. You must let me know - er - your fees - “

“Not a penny. It has been a pleasure. I hope all will go well. Of course the boy will be very upset at first when he finds she’s disappeared and left no address. Just go easy with him for a week or two.”

“If only Betty will forgive him - “

“She’ll forgive him all right. They’re a nice couple. By the way, I am leaving tomorrow, too.”

“Oh, Mr. Parker Pyne, we shall miss you.”...

Mr. Parker Pyne looked at the lights of Palma from the steamer. Beside him stood Dolores Ramona.

He said:

“A very nice piece of work, Madeleine. I’m glad you have come. It’s odd when you’re such a quiet stay-at-home girl really.”

Madeleine de Sara, alias Dolores Ramona, alias Maggie Sayers, said: “I’m glad you’re pleased, Mr. Parker Pyne. It’s been a nice little change. I think I’ll go below now and get to bed before the boat starts. I’m such a bad sailor.”

A few minutes later a hand fell on Mr. Parker Pyne’s shoulder. He turned to see Basil Chester.

“Had to come and see you off, Mr. Parker Pyne and give you Betty’s love and her and my best thanks. It was a grand work of yours. Betty and Mother are the best friends now. We’re no end grateful to you, Betty and I.”

“I wish you every happiness,” said Mr. Parker Pyne.

“Thanks.”

There was a pause, then Basil said:

“Is Miss - Miss de Sara - anywhere about? I’d like to thank her, too.”

Mr. Parker Pyne shot a keen glance at him. He said:

“I’m afraid Miss de Sara’s gone to bed.”

“Oh, too bad - well, perhaps I’ll see her in London sometime.”

“As a matter of fact she is going to America on business for me almost at once.”

“Oh!” Basil’s tone was blank. “Well,” he said. “I’ll be getting along.”

Mr. Parker Pyne smiled.

- 2.** Prepare some questions and tasks for your classmates about the story you have read:
 - a) choose the correct item A, B, C or D to complete the sentences;
 - b) say if the sentences are true or false.
- 3.** Retell the story. Describe the main characters.
- 4.** Discuss the story in class. Give your point of view.
 - 1) Should Mr. Parker Pyne help young people? Did they need his help?
 - 2) Do Basil and Betty love each other dearly?
 - 3) Should the young people change themselves to please the parents of their boy-friend (or girl-friend)?

Check Yourself!

Choose the correct item a, b, c or d.

Complete the sentences.

- The book contains information ____ the history of Ukraine.**
a) in
b) on
c) about
d) at
- I have heard an interesting programme ____ the radio.**
a) on
b) in
c) to
d) at
- TV channel “Inter” ____ such entertaining programmes as “A little town”, “While everyone is at home”, “Everything is for you”, “Kartata Potata”, “Izmaylovsky Park”, etc.**
a) shows
b) gives
c) prints
d) broadcasts
- We wanted to listen to the news therefore we ____ to another channel.**
a) switched on
b) turned off
c) switched over
d) turn up the volume
- Find the wrong item.**
a) An article is a piece of writing about a particular subject in a newspaper, magazine, etc.
b) A programme is a show or performance on television or radio, especially one that is played regularly.
c) A newspaper is facts or details that tell you something about a situation, person, event, etc.
d) A magazine is a large thin book with a paper cover that contains news, stories, articles, photographs, etc.
- Find the question to the answer.**
Because it isn't rather cold and the ice is melting there.
a) Why are you allowed to go skating to the lake?
b) Why are you forbidden to go skating to the lake?
c) Why are you let go skating to the lake?
d) Why are you going to skate tomorrow?

7. Find the answer to the question.

Must Andriy take part in the concert on Friday?

- a) No, he needn't. He doesn't have to take part in that concert. But if he wants, he can.
- b) No, he must not. He mustn't take part in that concert. But if he wants, he can.
- c) No, he must not. He isn't allowed to take part in the concert on Friday. But if he wants, he may.
- d) No, he must not. He is forbidden to take part in that concert. But if he wants, he can.

8. Find the correct sentence.

- a) We were allowed to read the news on radio last Sunday.
- b) We were allowed read the news on radio last Sunday.
- c) We are allowed to read the news on radio last Sunday.
- d) We were allow to read the news on radio last Sunday.

9. Find the analogue of the modal verb *must* in the Past Tenses.

- a) have to do smth
- b) had to do smth
- c) made smb do smth
- d) let smb do smth

10. Find the sentence which means polite request.

- a) Can I come in?
- b) Should I come in?
- c) Am I let come in?
- d) May I come in?

11. Choose the correct variant to translate the sentence.

Минулого року батьки забороняли мені дивитися телевізор у неділю.

- a) My parents made me watch TV on Sundays last year.
- b) My parents let me watch TV on Sundays last year.
- c) My parents allowed me to watch TV on Sundays last year.
- d) My parents forbade me to watch TV on Sundays last year.

12. Choose the proper sentence.

Your mother comes into the room and she sees that a TV set is broken. She asks you:

- a) What's the news?
- b) What's happened?
- c) How are you getting on?
- d) What's on?

UNIT 4 *** MUSIC IN OUR LIFE

I. Language Material

1. a) Listen and repeat the words in the right column.
Pay attention to the correct pronunciation.
- b) Read the sentences in the left column. Pay attention to the proper intonation.
- c) Say what role music plays in your life.
Answer the questions in the left column.

Many people in the world cannot imagine their lives without music. Music is made by instruments or **voices** in a way that is pleasant or **exciting**.

Some people are fond of **listening to music**. Some ones like to sing songs. And it doesn't **matter** if they **have an ear for music**. They sing out of tune but they enjoy singing. It's a fact that few people **have got perfect pitch**. Some people even sing in the **chorus** and **choirs**.

Do you like to listen to music?

Are you fond of singing? Do you sing well? Do you have an ear for music?

Is there anybody in your group who has got perfect pitch?

Who of you sing in the choirs?

Music is also the art of writing or playing music.

Some people go to music schools. They are trained **to play** different **musical instruments**. Some of them play **Ukrainian folk instruments** such as bayan, sopilka, bandura, etc.

Look at the pictures on page 129 and say if you play any musical instrument.

Do you go to music school?

Do you play the piano/guitar, etc.?

a voice [vɔɪs] голос
exciting [ɪk'saɪtɪŋ] захоплюючий

to listen to music — слухати музику

to matter — мати значення

to have an ear for music — мати музичний слух

a tune [tju:n] мелодія

to sing in tune — співати чисто, правильно

to sing out of tune — співати нечисто (фальшивити)

to have got perfect pitch — мати абсолютний слух

a chorus ['kɔ:rəs] хор

a choir ['kwaɪə] церковний або шкільний хор

to play musical instruments — грати на музичних інструментах

to play the piano — грати на фортепіано

a Ukrainian folk musical instrument — український народний муз. інструмент



- 1) an accordion [ə'kɔ:dʒən]
- 2) a drum [drʌm]
- 3) a harp [hɑ:p]
- 4) a guitar [gɪ'tɑ:]
- 5) a violin [ˌvaɪə'lɪn]

- 6) a piano [prɪ'æneɪ]
- 7) a (violin)cello [ˈtʃeləʊ]
- 8) a synthesizer [ˈsɪnθesaɪzə]
- 9) a saxophone [ˈsæksəfəʊn]
- 10) a trumpet [ˈtrʌmpɪt]

Some people can **write music**. To **compose music** you should have a talent — a special natural **ability**.

Someone who writes music is called a **composer**.

What is your favourite composer?

What is your favourite piece of music?

to compose [kəm'pəʊz]
to write/compose music —

писати музику

an ability [ə'bɪlɪtɪ] здібність

a composer [kəm'pəʊzə]

композитор

*What composers do you know?
What musical instruments they write
music for?*

A song is a short **piece of music** with words for singing. Sometimes composers **set poems to music**. Sometimes poets write poems for music. A person who writes the words and usually the music of a song is called a **songwriter**.

Do you know any songwriters?

What is your favourite song?

*Who the music and the words of this
song are written by?*

There are more than 200 styles of music: rock, pop, **classical**, **jazz**.
What kind of music do you like?

a piece of music — музичний твір

to set ... to music — класти слова на музику

a songwriter — поет-пісняр

classical ['klæsɪk(ə)l] **music**
— класична музика
jazz [dʒæz] джаз

2. Listening.

a) Look at the pictures and listen to Ruslan's story. Say which one of the activities in the pictures the boy is talking about.



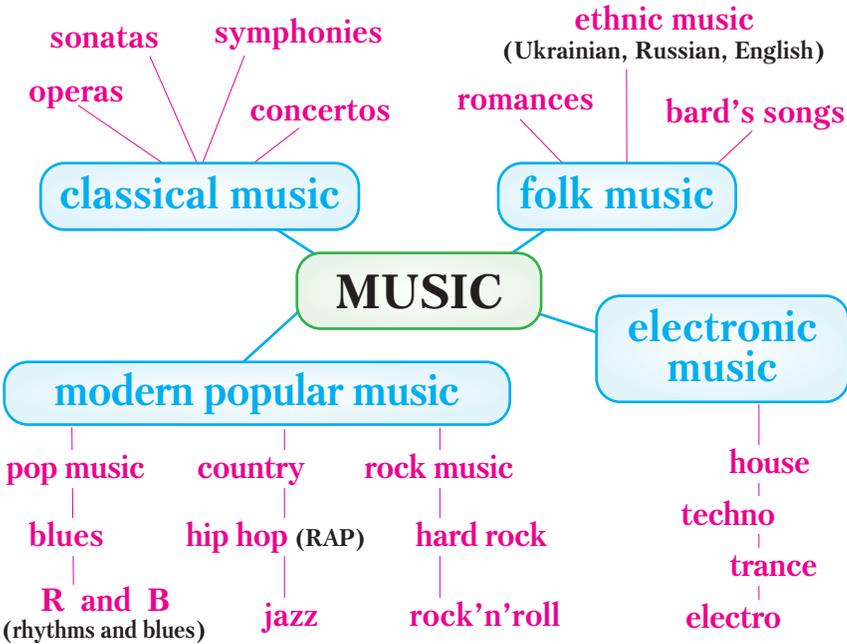
b) Listen to Ruslan's story again. Say which words he uses in his report. Write them down into your exercise-book.

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> to listen to music | <input type="checkbox"/> a songwriter | <input type="checkbox"/> jazz |
| <input type="checkbox"/> to play the guitar | <input type="checkbox"/> a pianist | <input type="checkbox"/> classical music |
| <input type="checkbox"/> to play the piano | <input type="checkbox"/> a disco | <input type="checkbox"/> rock |
| <input type="checkbox"/> to sing songs | <input type="checkbox"/> a chorus | <input type="checkbox"/> folk music |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a saxophone | <input type="checkbox"/> to compose music | <input type="checkbox"/> to accompany |

c) Speaking skills. Talk about Ruslan's story. Do you like to listen to music, sing songs, compose music, play musical instruments? What do you prefer?

3. a) Read the text and say what it deals with.

There are more than 200 styles of music. Here are some of them.



Classical music is an eternal piece of art. It has been popular for a long time. All people around the world know such names of classical composers as Bach, Mozart, Beethoven and others. Some people think that this music is very serious, but they are mistaken. It is a fact that some pieces of classical music were written for amusement. Nowadays people often listen to it for relaxation. It is popular to use some pieces of classical music as ringtones on mobile phones.

Folk music is traditional music that has been played by ordinary people in a particular area for a long time. There are many Ukrainian folk chorus in our country which sing folk songs. Some of them are very popular at home and abroad. For example, the Verioivka chorus.

Some people like to play different electronic musical instruments. The music they play is called electronic music. Such styles of electronic music as house, techno, trance, electro are popular now.

Modern popular music is liked by a lot of people. You can choose any style you like among pop music, country, rock music and others.

And here are some information for your vocabulary:

Blues is a slow sad style of music that came from the southern United States.

A *concerto* is a piece of music for one or more solo instruments and an orchestra.

Country music is popular music in the style of music from the southern and western United States.

Hard rock is a type of rock music that has loud electric guitars and a strong beat.

Hip hop is a kind of popular dance music with a regular heavy beat and spoken words.

Jazz is music originally played by black Americans with a strong beat and parts in which performers can play alone.

An *opera* is a musical play in which all of the words are sung.

Pop music is modern music that is popular with young people and usually consists of simple tunes with a strong beat.

R and B (rhythm and blues) is a style of popular music that is a mixture of blues and jazz.

Rock music is a type of popular modern music with a strong loud beat, played using guitars and drums.

Rock'n'roll is a style of music that was very popular in the 1950s and has a strong loud beat.

A *romance* is a song about someone's feelings which is often accompanied by a guitar or a piano.

A *sonata* is a piece of music with three or four parts that is written for a piano or for a piano and another instrument.

A *symphony* is a long piece of music usually in four parts written for an orchestra.

Techno is a type of popular electronic dance music with a fast, strong beat.

b) What pieces of music of different styles do you know? Do you like them?

c) Speaking skills. Talk about kinds of music you like. What kind of music do your parents and grandparents prefer?

4. Work in groups. Tell your friends about your favourite Ukrainian folk song (romance or bard's song). Say what it deals with as in the example. You may use dictionaries. Let your classmates guess what the song it is.

For example:

I would like to tell you about famous Ukrainian folk song. It is slow and sad. It deals with a cranberry bush which is called *kalyna*

in Ukraine. The song tells us how kalyna got to the field near a river. Once a young lad went by. He liked the bush very much and took it with himself. But then he left it in the field. The bush could die, but it could take root there. I understand that the song deals with the life of the young woman who was deserted by her boy-friend.

5. a) Read the words and say how the names of musicians are made. Say how the names of sportsmen are made. Give your examples.

an accordion – an **accordionist**, an **accordion-player**

a drum – a **drummer**

a harp – a **harpist**, a **harp-player**

a guitar – a **guitarist**

a violin – a **violinist**

a piano – a **pianist**

a (violin)cello – a **violoncellist**, a **cellist**

a synthesizer – a **synthesizer-player**

a saxophone – a **saxophonist**

a trumpet – a **trumpeter**, a **trumpet-player**

b) Speaking skills. Guess what musical instruments these sentences are about. Say which musicians play these musical instruments. What composers do you know? What musical instruments they write music for? Ask your classmates if they play any musical instruments. What Ukrainian musical instruments do you know?

- 1) a large musical instrument that you play by sitting in front of it and pressing the keys (narrow black and white bars);
- 2) a musical instrument that has six strings and is played by plucking the strings;
- 3) a musical instrument made of skin stretched over a circular frame that you hit with your hand or a stick;
- 4) the smallest instrument in the group of wooden musical instruments that are played by pulling a special stick across wire strings;
- 5) a musical instrument that you pull in and out to produce sounds while pushing buttons on one side to produce different notes;
- 6) a large musical instrument that you hold between your knees and play by pulling a special stick across wire strings;

- 7) a musical instrument that you blow into, which consists of a curved metal tube that is wide at the end with three buttons to change the note;
- 8) an electrical instrument that produces the sounds of various musical instruments;
- 9) a metal musical instrument with a single reed, used mostly in jazz and dance music;
- 10) a large musical instrument with strings that are stretched from top to bottom of a frame with three corners.

For example:

P₁: *Let me say a few words about the first musical instrument. I think it is a piano. A pianist plays the piano. I like to listen how people play the piano very much. My favourite composer is Beethoven. He wrote some concertos and sonatas for a piano. As far as I know Maryna and Olha play the piano very well. Dear friends! Is there anybody else who plays the piano, too?*

P₂: *May I say? I play the piano. It is a very beautiful musical instrument. As for me my favourite composer is Mozart. But I would like to say a few words about the next musical instrument. Correct me if I'm wrong, but I think it is ...*

- 6.** Work in pairs. Ask you friend some general and alternative questions to guess what his favourite modern song is.

You can use the following questions:

- Does a group of singers sing your favourite song?
- Is it sung by a woman or a man?
- Is the singer young?
- Is it a Ukrainian singer?
- Did he take part in a EuroVision contest?
- Is the music of the song made by one or more instruments?
- Is it written by a Ukrainian composer?
- Are the words written by the singer himself?
- Is the song slow or fast?
- Does it deal with unhappy life?
- Is it often broadcasted on radio? ... And so on.

- 7.** Write a report “Music in my life”. Use in it one of the sayings given below.

<i>Music is the universal language of the world.</i> Longfellow	Музика — універсальна мова світу. Лонгфело
<i>After silence that which comes nearest to expressing the inexpressible is music.</i> Huxley	Музика стоїть на другому місці після мовчання, коли потрібно виразити те, що виразити неможливо. Хакслі
<i>Composers should write tunes that drivers and errand boys can whistle.</i> Anonymous	Композитори повинні писати такі мелодії, які можуть насвистувати водії та посылні. Невідомий автор

8. Speaking skills. Answer the questions and talk about music.

- 1) Do you like music?
- 2) What kind of music are you fond of?
- 3) Are there many people fond of listening to music (singing songs, writing music, playing musical instruments)?
- 4) Does music help you?
- 5) What is your favourite singer (composer)?
- 6) Do/did you go to the musical school?
- 7) Do you compose music?

II. Grammar Section

Indirect Speech

Revision: Direct Speech

Vocabulary

direct speech – пряма мова

indirect speech – непряма мова

a punctuation mark – розділовий знак

a comma – кома

inverted commas – лапки

a declarative sentence – власне пряма мова

an object clause – підрядне речення

a conjunction – сполучник

a personal pronoun – особовий займенник (з.)

possessive – присвійний (з.)

interrogative – питальний (з.)

conjunctive – сполучний (з.)

demonstrative – вказівний (з.)

a sense – зміст

a reporting verb – дієслово в словах автора

an object – додаток

a preposition – прийменник

an indirect question – непряме питання

an inversion – інверсія

an adverb – прислівник

Imperative Mood – наказовий спосіб

Future-in-the-Past – майбутній час у минулому

1. Revision. a) Read and act out the dialogue.

“Why don’t you come to see us?” Ben asked his friend Tom.

Tom said, “I’m very busy.” “You see, I’m a trumpet-player of an orchestra,” added he, “and we perform every night”.

“Then you are free in the day-time,” Ben said to Tom.

“Certainly not”, answered the man. “We have rehearsals every morning.” Ben touched Tom’s arm, “I see. And what about the time between the rehearsals and the performances?”

“I give music lessons in-between,” Tom said sadly.

Then Ben asked him, “When do you sleep then? You play the trumpet all the day long!”

“Oh,” the man said smiling, “it’s not a problem. I have a good sleep during the rehearsals”.

b) Answer the questions.

- 1) Is the direct or indirect speech used in the dialogue?
- 2) What punctuation marks do we use in the direct speech?
- 3) Do we change someone’s words when we give them in the direct speech?

c) Read the dialogue given below using the direct speech.

- Hello, Helen. Are you busy tonight?
- Hi, Andrew. I’ve already done my homework. So, I’m free.
- What about going to the Lystopad theatre.
- That’s a very good idea. But what’s on?
- It’s a concert there tonight.
- And who is giving the concert?
- I don’t know for sure. It is the concert of classical music.
- Wow! It’s great. It is probably the Kyiv symphony orchestra. I saw a playbill yesterday. It’s great!
- Oh, yes, it is. I’d like to listen to R’n’B bands. But I know you are fond of classical music. It’s my surprise for you.
- Thank you very much!
- For you always welcome!
- And what time does the concert begin?
- At eight sharp. Let’s meet at 7 o’clock in the park.
- OK. See you soon.
- So long! And don’t be late!

2. Read the sentences and answer the questions. Then tell your classmates about rules of using indirect speech.

- 1) What conjunction do we usually use before an object clause when we change direct speech into indirect speech?
- 2) Is this conjunction always used?

He says, "The show begins at eight." He says **that** the show begins at eight.
He says the show begins at eight.

- 3) Are personal and possessive pronouns changed in indirect speech?

She says, "I'll work at **my** school". She says that **she**'ll work at **her** school.
She says, "**They** will work at **their** school". She says **they** will work at **their** school.

- 4) When the reporting verb **to say** is replaced by the verb **to tell**?
- 5) Is the verb **to tell** used *with* or *without* the preposition **to**?

He **says to me**, "I know it". He **tells me** that he knows it.
He **says**, "I know it". He **says** that he knows it.
I **say to him**, "It's great". I **tell him** that it's great.
I **say**, "It's great". I **say** that it's great.

- 6) What tense is **Present Indefinite** changed when the reporting verb is used in one of past tenses?

He said, "**I know that pianist**." He said that **he knew that pianist**.

- 7) What tense is **Present Continuous** changed when the reporting verb is used in one of past tenses?

"**I am playing the violin**," she said. She said **she was playing the violin**.

- 8) What tense is **Present Perfect** changed when the reporting verb is used in one of past tenses?

He said, "**I have translated** the text." He said **he had translated** the text.

- 9) What tense is **Present Perfect Continuous** changed when the reporting verb is used in one of past tenses?

"**I have been listening to music** since 8 o'clock," she said. She said that **she had been listening to music** since 8 o'clock.

10) What tense is **Past Indefinite** changed when the reporting verb is used in one of past tenses?

He said, "I **saw** her there."

He said that he **had seen** her there.

11) What tense is **Past Continuous** changed when the reporting verb is used in one of past tenses?

She said, "I **was writing music**."

She said that she **had been writing music**.

12) Are **Past Indefinite** and **Past Continuous** changed if the time and the date are indicated?

"I **saw** her **in May**," he said.

He said that he **saw** her **in May**.

She said, "We **were listening** to the radio **at 7 o'clock**."

She said that they **were listening** to the radio **at 7 o'clock**.

13) Are **Past Perfect** and **Past Perfect Continuous** changed when the reporting verb is used in one of past tenses?

The pupils said, "We **had finished** our work by 5 o'clock."

The pupils said they **had finished** their work by 5 o'clock.

"At that time I **had been working** in the club for three years," he said.

He said that at that time he **had been working** in the club for three years.

14) What verb is the auxiliary verb **will ('ll)** in **Future Indefinite**, **Future Continuous** and **Future Perfect** changed into when the reporting verb is used in one of past tenses?

He said, "I **will** go there."

He said that he **would** go there.

She said, "I **will have read** the book by Monday."

She said that she **would have read** the book by Monday.

He said, "I **will be working** this summer."

He said that he **would be working** that summer.

15) Which words are the **demonstrative pronouns** and some **time-expressions** changed into?

He said, "I live in **this** house."

He said that he lived in **that** house.

"I'll go there **tomorrow**," he said.

He said he'd go there **the next day**.

this – **that**

ago – **before**

these – **those**

next – **the next**

today – **that day**

now – **then**

yesterday – **the day before**

here – **there**

tomorrow – **the next day**

the day before yesterday – two days before
the day after tomorrow – two days later

- 16) Is there an inversion in *indirect questions*?
- 17) What conjunctions do we usually use before an object clause in *indirect general questions*?
- 18) Are the interrogative pronouns and adverbs changed in *indirect special questions*?

"Do you know this composer?" I asked him. I asked him **if he knew** that composer.

"Have you a pencil?" he asked me. He asked me **if I had** a pencil.

"Why didn't you come to the theatre?" he said to me. He asked me **why I hadn't come to** the theatre.

"Where have you been?" she asked him. She asked him **where he had** been.

3. a) Change the following sentences into indirect speech. Pay attention to the verbs and pronouns.

1. He said, "Mark is playing the piano for the guests now". 2. "I'll meet you at the concert hall at seven tomorrow", John said. 3. "I cannot play any musical instrument, but I sing rather well. And I am fond of listening to music", Margaret said to her sister. 4. "The concert has already finished. We'll come home in half an hour", Maryna said. 5. "My friend went to the sea five years ago", my uncle said. 6. "I would like to learn to play the guitar", my sister says. 7. "Did you hear the songs of this singer?" I asked him. 8. He said, "What did Oleh say about those songs?" 9 "Do you have a photo of one of German composers?" the girls asked. 10. "Where do you go today", the boy asked his aunt. 11. "I have a perfect pitch," I said to him. 12. "Do you go to music school?" I am often asked.

- b) Change the following sentences into direct speech.

1. George said that he was fond of jazz. 2. We said we went to the concert the day before. 3. She told them they could listen to music before she would come back. 4. Then he asked me if I wrote those songs. 5. She promised her father she would be at home at 10 o'clock. 6. The boy asked me if I wanted to go to the concert. 7. He says that he went to music school 5 years ago. 8. He said that he hadn't enjoyed

the concert as much as he had done the opera. 9. She asked who was my favourite composer. 10. I asked if he could sing.

4. Match how demonstrative pronouns and some time-expressions are shifted when the direct speech is changed into the indirect speech. Make 10 pairs of sentences (direct and indirect speech), using the verbs *to add*, *to answer*, *to explain*, *to inform*, *to promise*, *to remark*, *to think*, *to ask*, *to say*, *to tell*, *to ask*.

Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
this	the next day
these	then
now	the day before
here	that day
today	two days before
yesterday	the next
the day before yesterday	two days later
tomorrow	that
the day after tomorrow	before
ago	those
next	there

For example:

Maria *said to me*, “*This* pianist *is* the best musician in the orchestra. He *played* perfectly *yesterday*.” – Maria *told me* that *that* pianist *was* the best musician in the orchestra. She also added that he *had played* perfectly *the day before*.

5. a) Work in pairs as in the example.

For example:

Ask your classmate if he has got a pet.

- Have you got a pet?
- I had a dog three years ago.
- He said that he had had a dog three years before.

Ask you classmate:

- 1) if he goes to music school;
- 2) how long he has gone there;
- 3) where he lived five years ago;
- 4) if he has a hobby;
- 5) why he is fond of doing it;
- 6) what he did after classes yesterday;
- 7) where he spent his last summer vacation;
- 8) when he started to learn English;
- 9) if he likes music;
- 10) what his favourite singer was in childhood;
- 11) what kind of music he likes;
- 12) what his favourite singer/composer/song/musical instrument is.

b) Work in groups of three. Imagine the situation: your dad receives a guest from the USA. He doesn't speak English so you play a role of an interpreter. Make up and act out the dialogue "Talking about Music".

Pupil A plays a role of the father and speaks Ukrainian.

Pupil B plays a role of his son, the interpreter. He translates sentences using the indirect speech.

Pupil C plays a role of an American and speaks English.

6. Read the exclusive interview with Ruslana for ESCKAZ.com by Andy Mikheev before the Eurovision contest. Retell it using indirect speech.

— ***Hello, Ruslana, we congratulate you on gaining the right to participate in a very prestigious European contest – Eurovision. What does this participation mean for you?***

Thank you!

I like such events as contests, festivals. This is a big chance to meet many people and to make friends with the participants of the contest.

For me participation in Eurovision is a window to Europe, this is a chance to become popular on a very high level.



- ***What did you learn about the Eurovision Song Contest. Have you seen it during last years?***

I always watch it. I have dreamed about my participation in the contest since 1997.

- ***Do you know any of the other competitors? Will you listen to their songs beforehand?***

Yes, Belarus and Malta. We took part in National finale there. Surely we will attentively listen to the other songs of the participants of the contest.

- ***Which of Russian singers do you like?***

Yulia Savicheva from Stars Factory show.

- ***What method of selection do you prefer – closed (like in Russia and Ukraine) or open (like in Belarus and the majority of the European countries)?***

I like when a preselection is organized like a show. Then it is very exciting. I think that not only the people's voting but also the opinion of professionals are very important. Then the selection will be more objective.

- ***Tell us a little more about your song.***

This is our new style, which we called "Wild Dances". We adapted exotic ethnic style to modern music. And we took as the basis drive rhymes and dances of the highlands. And our costumes have some elements of the Carpathian costumes.

- ***You have decided to perform contest item in bilingual version. Do you think it can be a key to your success?***

I don't know if it is a key to success, but it is the wish to reproduce the charm of Carpathian phrases and at the same time to be understood by European audience.

- ***Could you tell us about a video for the song?***

It will be filmed in the Carpathian mountains. Special effects will be filmed in the studio. We don't want a lot of folk or pure folk. This will be our vision of it in a modern style. It concerns everything: costumes, locations and so on.

- ***How do you consider your chances for a successful performance?***

If I create a hit song, if my image is vivid and if I create strong energy during the performance with the supporting ballet, I think my chances will be high enough.

- ***We wish you success and are waiting for your song. Thanks for the interview.***

Thank you, too. And I wish you the wild energy!

7. Write a letter to your English pen friend about your free time and leisure. Then exchange the letters with your classmates. Retell your friend's letter using the indirect speech.

For example:

Dear John!

Thank you for your letter.

I want to tell you about my free time and leisure as you asked me about it. ...

Andriy greeted his friend John and thanked him for his letter. Then Andriy wrote that he wanted to tell the boy about his free time and leisure as John had asked him about it.

8. Listening.

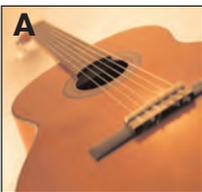
- a) Listen to the text.
b) Answer the questions.

If you see the icon choose the correct item A, B, C or D.

If you see the icon say if the sentences are true or false.

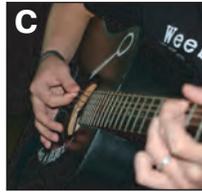
- c) Retell the text. Then act out the dialogue.

- 1) Where did Peter go?
a) to the concert; c) to the theatre;
b) to visit his father's friend; d) to the father's work.
- 2) Peter plays the guitar a little, doesn't he?
- 3) What musical instrument does Oscar play?



- 4) Peter's father prefers singing to playing musical instruments, doesn't he?
- 5) Who is Peter's favourite composer?
a) Beethoven; c) Bach;
b) Mozart; d) Straus.

- 6) Peter is fond of classical music, isn't he?
- 7) What did the men and a boy do after supper?



- 8) Oscar has got a perfect pitch, hasn't he?
- 9) What kind of music did he play?
- a) bard's songs; c) romances;
- b) folk songs; d) blues.
- 10) Peter would like to learn to play the piano, wouldn't he?

III. Oral Practice

1. Read the text and tell your friends about a pop-rock group "Ranetki".

Hello! We are Ranetki Girls, an all-girl Russian pop-rock group.



I am Anya Rudneva, a Back Vocal of the group. I also play the Rhythm Guitar. I was born on the 11th of January, in 1990. I often write the words of our songs.

I am Natasha Shchelkova, a Lead Guitar of the group. I usually play a guitar solo. I was born on the 6th of April, in 1990.





I am Lena Tretiakova, a Back Vocal of the group. I play the Bass Guitar. I was born on the 23rd of December, in 1988. I was a sportsman earlier. I played football and went in for kick-boxing.

I am Zhenia Ogurtsova, a Vocal. I also play keyboard instruments. I was born on the 29th of March, in 1989. I am fond of snowboard



I am Lera Kozlova, a Vocal of the group. I play the Bass Guitar. I dream to buy a motorbike "Harley Davidson" and make a trip around the World.

2. a) Imagine that you are the member of your favourite group. Tell your classmates about yourself as the Ranetki girls.
b) Give an interview to your classmates as a music star.

3. a) Look at the photos of Ukrainian singers and say if you like the songs they sing. What kind of music do they sing? Who of them takes part in Eurovision song contests? Who is your favourite Ukrainian singer? Sing one of his/her songs.
b) Describe appearance of these singers. You may consult pages 16-17.



Ruslana Lyzhychko



Sviatoslav Vakarchuk



Tina Karol



Oleh Skrypka



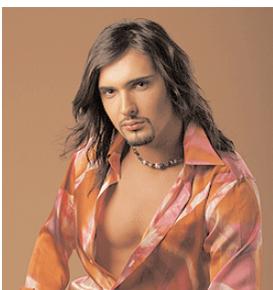
Iryna Bilyk



Olexandr Ponomaryov



Natalka Mogylevska



Vitaliy Kozlovsky



Ani Lorak



Andriy Kuzmenko



Verka Serdutchka



Svitlana Loboda

b) Read the text and talk about the Eurovision Song Contest.

Every year countries from Europe enter the Eurovision Song Contest. People from all over the continent watch the event on TV or listen to it on the radio. It's a fantastic chance for singers to represent their countries and to be heard and seen all over Europe.

According to the rules the winner is chosen not only by a competent jury but also by TV viewers and radio listeners. It is especially exciting for Ukrainians that the winner of the Eurovision Song Contest 2004 was the Ukrainian singer Ruslana. She performed the song "Wild dances".

4. Work in groups of three. Ask your friend about his/her favourite singer as in the example. Guess who he/she is.

For example:

Pupil A: Ask Maksym if his favourite singer is a man or a woman.

Pupil B: Maksym! Is your favourite singer a man or a woman?

Pupil C: My favourite singer is a man.

Pupil B: Oleh! Maksym said that his favourite singer was a man.

Pupil A: Andriy! Ask Maksym if his favourite singer lives in Ukraine.

Pupil B: Maksym! Does your favourite singer live in Ukraine?...

5. Imagine that you came to Internet page "Singers". There you found a forum. Read the messages, say who is right in your opinion and give your piece of advice.

Forum (or web-forum) is an Internet page where people have a chance to discuss different subjects. In contrast to web-chat (where people talk to each other at the same time), forum allows users to leave their messages at any time.

Section: My favourite singer

User: Bagira

Topic: Help me!!! I fell in love!!!

Help me, please! I don't know what to do. I fell in love with Dima Bilan. He is handsome, he is the best singer in the world! I took to him at first sight. I cannot live without him! I cannot eat and sleep. Advise me what I can do!

Date: 20/08/2009

User: Cheerful Girl
Topic: to Bagira <Help me!!! I fell in love!!!>

Dear Bagira! I think you shouldn't despair. If your love is true, you can be a success. I advise you to find the address of his Internet page and write a letter to him.

Date: 21/08/2009

User: Race-Driver
Topic: to Cheerful Girl

As for me, you (Cheerful Girl) are wrong. I think you give vain hopes to our poor Bagira. In my opinion, it is natural to fall in love with a famous singer. Bagira didn't write how old she was. But I think she is 13 or 14. Bagira should live and wait when she stops loving Dima Bilan and really falls in love with a 'good-boy-next-door'.

Date: 21/08/2009

User: Max
Topic: to Bagira <Help me!!! I fell in love!!!>

Dear Bagira! Love is beautiful. Be happy you have it. But remember – love cannot be forced. Dima Bilan is a nice boy and I am sure many girls love him. If you want him to return his love to you, you should be a girl of his dream. Let me give you a piece of good advice: learn about him as much as you can: what his hobbies are, favourite dishes, books, singers, sports, etc. After that try to “become a girl of his dream”: read the books he likes, go in for his favourite sport, etc. And if the life gives you a chance to meet each other, he will like you without fail!

Date: 27/08/2009

6. a) Work in pairs. Make up and act out the dialogue: you have got a free evening, invite your friend to the concert. Use the sentences given below or those on pages 39, 42-43.

Do you often go to concerts?
Would you like to go to a concert?

Where can one hear ... ?

classical music/modern popular music/folk music.

I want to go to a concert of ...

– *symphony music*;

– *chamber music* (*камерної музики*);

– *light music*;

– *jazz music*;

– *instrumental music.*

I'd like to go to the concert by this

singer/violinist/conductor (*диригент*)/*pianist/choir.*

What time does the concert begin?

Who's giving the concert?

What's on the programme?

Who's conducting?

Who is the *soloist/performer*?

What kind of voice does the singer have?

It's *soprano/mezzo-soprano/contralto/bass/tenor/baritone.*

She's/he's in good (bad) voice today.

Did you like the concert?

The concert was a great success.

What items got encores? (Що виконували на біс?)

b) Talk about your last visit to the concert.

7. Speaking skills. Answer the questions and tell your friends about the disco you usually go to.

- 1) Do you go to the disco?
- 2) Where do you go dancing?
- 3) When does the disco start there?
- 4) When is it over?
- 5) Are you allowed to come home late in the evening?
- 6) What kind of music is played there?
- 7) Can you listen to your favourite songs there?
- 8) Do you like dancing or watching and listening to music?
- 9) Do you like to dance to the music of a rock group?
- 10) What kind of music do you like to dance?
- 11) Is there a DJ there?
- 12) Do you often go to the disco?

IV. Reading

1. Before you start reading, write down what British singers and bands you know. What is the greatest English band in your opinion?
2. Read the text and look up new words in a dictionary. Say why the text has such a title.

The British Legend

In 1957 a student at Quarry Bank School in Liverpool named John Lennon decided to form a group. It was the beginning of the story about the most famous rock band of all time. John named the group "The Blackjacks", in a week the name had changed into "The Quarry Men". John sang and played the guitar, Colin Hanton played drums, Eric Griffiths – the guitar, Pete Shotton – washboard, Rod Davis – banjo and Bill Smith – bass. Bill was soon replaced by Ivan Vaughan.

John was a fan of American rock'n'roll music. He introduced songs by Buddy Holly, Carl Perkins, the Coasters, Elvis Presley, Jerry Lee Lewis and Gene Vincent. On July 6, 1957, Ivan Vaughan invited Paul McCartney to see their band. The fifteen-year-old McCartney was introduced to sixteen-year-old Lennon and a unique song writing partnership began.

Paul played the guitar and vocals. The group appeared at several local talent contests but it wasn't a success. By January 1959, the group wasn't operating. George joined the Les Stewart Quartet.

Then he contacted John and Paul and The Quarry Men were reunited as a quartet with Ken Brown. Later Ken Brown left the group. From October 1959 to January 1960 John, Paul and George continued as a trio with Paul on drums. They called themselves "Johnny & the Moondogs".

John entered The Liverpool College of Art. He knew that they needed a bass player so he asked two students if they would like the position. The two were Stuart Sutcliffe and Rod Murray. Both could not buy a guitar. Later, Stuart sold one of his paintings and bought a Hofner bass guitar and joined the group in January, 1960. At that time the group took another name "Silver Beetles". They also needed drummers. At first they invited Tommy Moore. He toured with them through Scotland and then left. The next was Norman Chapman but he left only a few weeks later.

Finally, Paul contacted Pete Best and offered him the job of a drummer. They called the group "The Beatles" just before their first trip to Hamburg in August, 1960. John, Paul, George, Stuart and Pete left for Hamburg. At that time "The Beatles" weren't the leading group in Liverpool. In Hamburg they sang all the songs, that they had composed by that time. The concerts lasted 4-5 hours, so they tried to "make a show". At least, they became a Liverpool's top band.

After Hamburg, Stuart Sutcliffe left and so "The Beatles" were a four-piece band and Paul was a bass guitarist. John, Paul and George were the three front-line guitarists and the leading singers. Pete Best played drums and occasionally sang one song but he had developed a drum sound called "the atom beat" which many other drummers tried to imitate.

By that time, "The Beatles" had Brian Epstein as their manager and he agreed that Decca Records would hear them. The head of Decca Records told "The Beatles" manager, "Guitar groups are on their way out, Mr. Epstein". "The Beatles" were upset but Epstein organized them a contract with Parlophone Records. In August of 1962, Pete Best was replaced by Ringo Starr.

Their first single "Love Me Do" was issued on October 5, 1962 and was a hit. 1963 and 1964 were the most important years in their careers. In 1963 the "Beatlemania" craze started in Britain. They performed in the Royal Variety Show and the highest rating TV show "Sunday Night At The London Palladium".

They were a great success in 1964. The group became symbols. America was upset by the death of President John F. Kennedy and "The Beatles" appeared on the stage to bring them fun and excitement. They also brought back rock'n'roll to America.

Ed Sullivan was at London airport when "The Beatles" returned from Sweden and saw all the girls screaming, the boys cheering and the media taking pictures. He knew they were something special and he booked them to his TV show "The Ed Sullivan Show". The same year "The Beatles" toured America for the first time and acted in their first film "A Hard Day's Night". In 1965, "The Beatles" second film "HELP!" premiered. Later that year, "The Beatles" gave a concert at Shea Stadium in New York to a crowd of 55,000 screaming fans, the largest audience in the history of music life.

But they also had some problems during their tours. During the first tour to Tokyo, Japan "The Beatles" were locked up in their hotel and were not allowed to come out until show time.

The next one was in the Philippines when, on a day off, Madam Marcos invited them to a Royal dinner. "The Beatles" politely turned down the invitation and the public was furious. "The Beatles" quickly left.

In 1966, "The Beatles" were under heavy pressure from mass media after John made a remark that "The Beatles" were more popular than Jesus. John had to apologize. The next scandal was when in Cincinnati a concert promoter couldn't understand why "The Beatles" didn't want to play electric guitars in a rainstorm.

During the sixties, "The Beatles" not only became a musical phenomenon, they affected the styles and fashions of the decade. They transformed the record industry as well. They gain royalties for artists and producers, revolutionized music tours and started the Pop promo film or what we know today as "The Music Video".

All their albums, from "Please, Please Me" to "Abbey Road" were all popular and unique in their own way. But after the death of their long-time manager Brian Epstein, things started to fall apart for "The Beatles".

The group focused less and less on the band. In late 1964 they began to take marijuana and other drugs such as LSD which they took for the first time in late 1965. "The Beatles" played their last concert at Candlestick Park in San Francisco on August 29, 1966.

In 1967, their manager Brian Epstein died of an accidental drug overdose. John and Paul quarrelled because Paul was trying to become the leader of the group after Brian's death.

After "The White Album" they worked on the "Let It Be" project. The relations between Paul and George became worse when they started recording at Twickenham Film Studios. "The Beatles" gave their last public appearance on the top of the Apple building on January 30, 1969. The band decided to get together to make one final album "Abbey Road". Only Paul tried to keep the group together, he made them make Magical Mystery Tour in 1967 after Brian's death and tried to get them all excited about recording and performing. Recording yes, performing no. That period was so-called their "studio years". They didn't get together except to record. Their "Let It Be" album was a great success on May 8, 1970. A month later Paul publicly announced he was no longer a member of the group.

In the end, "The Beatles" became a true legend. Their music touched the hearts of listeners. "The Beatles" wanted more than just to be "Beatles", they wanted happiness, a happiness that they once had

when they first became successful. John found happiness with his true love Yoko, his Plastic Ono Band and son Sean; Paul found his happiness: he had Linda, his children and Wings; for George happiness meant his solo career, Olivia and his son Dhani; and Ringo was also happy because he had made a solo and acting career, he had Barbara and his sons. They will always be the greatest rock'n'roll band in the history of music.

3. Make up a chronology card “The Beatles”.

<h1>THE BEATLES</h1>	
Name	...
Birth (formed)	...
Birth-place	
Death (disbanded)	
Members	



March, 1957	...
July 6, 1957	...
...	
...	
...	

Biography

- 4.** Ask your friends some questions about “The Beatles”.
- 5.** Retell the text using the sentences of ex. 5 on page 81.
- 6.** Discuss the text with your classmates and say if you have heard any songs of this band. Do you like them?

V. Writing

1. a) Work in pairs: dictate and write down the words that you've learnt during your previous lessons. Make up sentences with them. If you don't know how to write the word, ask your friend to spell it.
b) Write an essay (not more than 16 sentences) about music in Ukraine.
2. Read and act out the dialogue. Then change it into direct and indirect speech.
 - Oh, I see you have got a good music collection at home.
 - It's my hobby. I collect the best songs on discs.
 - When do you listen to them all?
 - I am fond of listening to music. If I want to have a drive, I listen to rock music. If I need some relaxation, I choose jazz, blues or classical music.
 - And what is your favourite composer?
 - I love Bach music.
 - Are there any discs with modern popular music?
 - Of course, there are. Here are they.
 - Who is your favourite singer?
 - I like Sviatoslav Vakarchuk. He writes a good music and songs. Do you know him?
 - Oh, yes, I do. As far as I remember he is a leading singer of "Elza's Okean"
 - You are right. Would you like to listen to music now?
 - With great pleasure.
3. a) Change the following sentences into indirect speech. Pay attention to the verbs and pronouns.
 1. She said, "I am writing music now".
 2. "I'll play the drum at the concert tomorrow", John explained.
 3. "I have never heard the songs of this singer before. I'll listen to them with great pleasure", Oleh said to his brother.
 4. "Do you listen to the radio while you prepare dinner", the man asked.
 5. "We were watching TV at 5 o'clock", my sister said.
b) Change the following sentences into direct speech.
 1. I said that I liked R'n'B very much.
 2. We tell them we went to the disco two days before.
 3. She told them they would take a part in

the performance the next day. 4. Then he asked his girl-friend if she was fond of rock music. 5. She asked his father when he had learnt to play the guitar.

4. Write some sentences to give examples to the rules of using indirect speech.
5. Work in pairs. Ask your friend about his/her favourite singer, composer, kind of music, etc. Write down your dialogue. Then tell your classmates about your friends interests.

For example:

I asked my friend if he liked music. He told me that he liked it very much. I asked him what his favourite singer was. He answered that his favourite singer was Oleh Skrypka. ...

6. Writing a letter.

a) Complete the sentences about the parts of a private letter and match them with items in the letter given below. Can you think any more closing polite remarks?

The private (friendly) letter consists of five parts.

- The **body** gives the writer's address and the date.
- The **signature** says "hello".
- The **heading** is the main part and tells the message.
- The **closing** says "good-bye".
- The **greeting** tells who writes the letter.

1 — 25 Mill Street
Santa Rosa, CA 95405
February 12, 2010

2 — Dear Maksym,

3 — I hope that you had a nice time at the concert. Did you like it?
I took part in our school performance the day before yesterday.
I played the guitar there. I will send your some photos. ...

4 — With best wishes,

5 — Tom

b) Study this sample and write your own one. Pay attention to capital letters and comas and write them correctly.

7. **Internet Skills.** Go to www.google.com and type into space «Search» a name and surname of your favourite foreign singer. Write a report about him/her. Then click “Google Search”.

V. Time for Fun

1. Read and act out the jokes. Retell them and tell your friends your own funny stories.

In the Opera-House a man (to his neighbour): This singer sings awfully.

His neighbour: I'm sorry you don't like, sir.

Man: But why?

His neighbour: She is my wife.

Man: Excuse me for my mistake. I think it wasn't the singer I didn't like, but the music.

His neighbour: I'm the composer of this opera.

GEORGE BERNARD SHAW (1856-1950), *British writer*

When George Bernard Shaw was still a young music critic, he was once invited to a party. When he came into the sitting-room, the daughter of the house was playing the piano. As soon as she saw the guest, she stopped playing and said to him, "I've heard that you're very fond of music!" "I am," Shaw replied, "but never mind, go on playing."



HOMWORK

1. Write an essay about music in our life.
2. **Project Work.** Work in groups to make an album “Ukrainian folk songs”.
 - 1) Translate texts of some Ukrainian folk songs into English.
 - 2) Find an information about Ukrainian folk singers and choruses.
 - 3) Write about Ukrainian folk musical instruments and add their pictures or photos.
3. Describe the picture. What can you say about children's appearance, age? What are they doing?

Use the words and sentences:

I see... in the picture.

He/she is ...-ing.

This is... .

They are ...-ing.

There is/are... .

A boy, a girl, to play the piano/flute, to accompany (*smb. on smth.*), a rehearsal, to rehearse, a concert.



4. Write 10 sentences with indirect speech.
5. Find in any newspaper or magazine an interview with a singer. Make a summary of the article using indirect speech.
6. Read over the rules of indirect speech. Imagine that you had your English exam. Your parents are asking you about it. Tell them which questions you answered using the indirect speech.

For example:

The teacher asked me what my hobby was. I answered that I liked to read about animals. I added that I had a dog and I enjoyed walking it.

7. Write an essay about your favourite singer. Tell your classmates what you know and what you want to learn about him/her.

8. Prepare 10 questions for your classmates about their visiting the concert (to the disco).
9. Write a letter to your favourite English-speaking singer.
10. **Project Work.** Work in groups to make a wall-newspaper "Eurovision Song Contests".
 - 1) Find texts of songs which were performed in the contests and translate them into Ukrainian.
 - 2) Find an information about Ukrainian singers who took part in it.
 - 3) Write an essay about Eurovision Song Contest 2005.

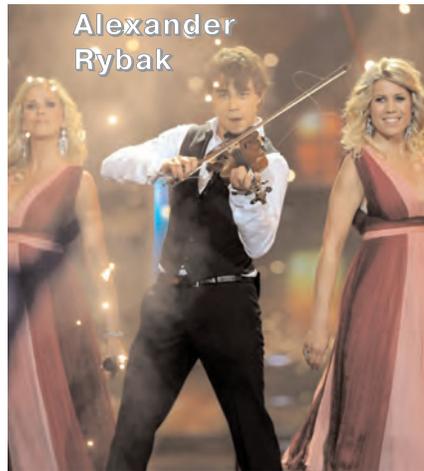
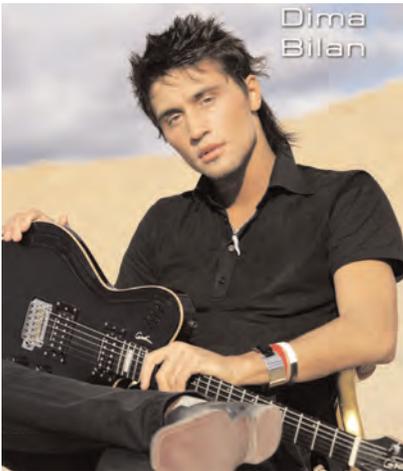
Home Reading

1. Read the songs and look up new words in a dictionary.

Dima Bilan – Believe

Even when the thunder and storm begins,
I'll be standing strong like a tree in the wind.
Nothing's gonna move this mountain
or change my direction.
I'm falling off the sky
and I'm all alone.
The courage that's inside is gonna break my fall
Nothing's gonna dim my light within.
But if I keep going on,
It will never be impossible.
Not today...
Believing
There is no I'm breathin'.
There is not a limit to what I can dream.
'Cause I got something to believe in,
Mission to keep climbing.
Nothing else can stop me if I just believe
and I believe in me.
Even when the world tries to pull me down,
Tell me that I can try to turn me around.
I won't let them put my fire out, without no.
But if I keep going on.
It will never be impossible.
Not today...

Yes, I got something to believe in
As long as I'm breathin'.
There is not a limit to what I can dream,
'Cause I got something to believe in,
Mission to keep climbin'.
Nothing else can stop me if I just believe
And I believe
I can do it all
Open every door
Turn unthinkable to reality
You see, I can do it all and more
Believing, as long as I'm breathing
There is not a limit to what I can dream
Believing, mission to keep climbing
Nothing else can stop me if I just believe
And I believe in me.



Alexander Rybak – Fairy Tale

Years ago, when I was younger,
I kindly liked a girl I knew.
She was mine and we were sweethearts
That was then, but then it's true...
I'm in love with a fairytale,
Even though it hurts.
'Cause I don't care if I lose my mind.
I'm already cursed.

Every day we started fighting,
Every night we fell in love.
No one else could make me sadder,
But no one else could lift me high above.
I don't know what I was doing,
When suddenly we fell apart.
Nowadays, I cannot find her,
But when I do, we'll get a brand new start.
I'm in love with a fairytale,
Even though it hurts.
'Cause I don't care if I lose my mind
I'm already cursed.
She's a fairytale.

John Lennon & Paul McCartney – Yesterday

Yesterday, all my troubles
seemed so far away.
Now it looks as though
they're here to stay.
Oh I believe in yesterday...
Suddenly, I'm not half
the man I used to be.
There's a shadow
hanging over me.
Oh yesterday came suddenly...
Why she had to go I don't know,
She wouldn't say.
I said something wrong,
now I long for yesterday.
Yesterday, love was
such an easy game to play.
Now I need a place to hide away.
Oh I believe in yesterday ...



2. Sing the songs.
3. Write some sentences about the plots of the songs.
4. Speaking skills. Talk about the singers who sang the songs. Do you like them?

Check Yourself!

Choose the correct item a, b, c or d.

Complete the sentences.

1. I am fond ____.

- a) of listening to music
- b) of listening to the music
- c) to listen to music
- d) of listening the music

2. He plays ____ piano very well.

- a) on
- b) the
- c) in
- d) at

3. The styles of modern popular music are ____ and others.

- a) classical music
- b) rock music
- c) blues
- d) jazz

4. The singer couldn't sing yesterday because he ____.

- a) hadn't an ear for music
- b) was in a good voice
- c) hadn't got perfect pitch
- d) was in a bad voice

5. Find the wrong item.

- a) A musician is someone who sets poems to music.
- b) A composer is someone who writes music.
- c) A singer is someone who sings songs.
- d) A songwriter is someone who writes the words and usually the music of a song.

6. Find the question to the answer.

He said he went to the concert that day.

- a) Where did he go yesterday?
- b) Where did he go today?
- c) Where will he go tomorrow?
- d) Where did he go the day before yesterday?

7. Change the sentence into direct speech.

Andriy told me he played the guitar.

- a) Andriy said to me, "I played the guitar".
- b) Andriy said, "I play the guitar".
- c) Andriy said to me, "I play the guitar".
- d) Andriy said to me, "I am playing the guitar".

8. Change the sentence into direct speech.

My mother said to me, "I shall go there tomorrow".

- a) My mother said to me she'd go there the next day.
- b) My mother said she'd go there tomorrow.
- c) My mother told me that she'd go there the next day.
- d) My mother told me that she'd go there tomorrow.

9. Which of these tenses don't changed when the reporting verb is used in one of past tenses?

- a) Past Indefinite
- b) Present Perfect
- c) Past Perfect
- d) Future Indefinite

10. Which word is the time-expression "the day after tomorrow" changed into when we use indirect speech?

- a) two days later
- b) two days before
- c) that day
- d) the next day

11. Choose the correct variant to translate the sentence.

Мій друг запитав мене, яку музику я люблю.

- a) My friend asked me what kind of music I liked.
- b) My friend asks me what kind of music I like.
- c) My friend asked me if I liked music.
- d) My friend asked me what kind of music I like.

12. Choose the proper sentence.

You went to the concert yesterday. Spectators liked it very much. Your grandfather asks you about the concert. You answer:

- a) It had a great success.
- b) It was a poor success.
- c) It got a great success.
- d) It was a great success.

UNIT 5 *** THE UNITED KINGDOM OF GREAT BRITAIN AND NORTHERN IRELAND

I. Language Material

1. a) Listen and repeat the words in the right column. Pay attention to the correct pronunciation.
b) Read the sentences in the left column. Pay attention to the proper intonation.
c) Say what you know about the United Kingdom. Answer the questions in the left column.

The official name of the country, we usually call England and sometimes Great Britain, is the **United Kingdom** of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. The UK is a part of **Europe**, a member of the **European Union** and a **founding member** of **NATO**.

How do you usually call the country?

The United Kingdom is located in the Western Europe, to the north-west of the **coast** of France. Great Britain is **separated** from the continent by the English **Channel**. The **narrowest** part of the channel is called the **Strait** of Dover. The country is situated between the North Atlantic Ocean and the North Sea.

Its **total** territory is 244,820 **sq km**.

It has a land **border** with Ireland.

The United Kingdom lies on the British **Isles** and **includes** the northern one-sixth of the **island** of Ireland.

The British Isles are **surrounded** by the **shallow** water of the Irish Sea on the west; the North Sea on the north and north-east; the **Norwegian** Sea on the East.

Where is the United Kingdom situated?

Point to it on the map of Europe.

united [ju'naɪtɪd] об'єднаний
the European [ˌjʊərə'pi:ən]

Union – Євросоюз

a founding member – член-засновник

NATO ['neɪtəʊ] (*North-Atlantic Treaty Organization*) – НАТО (Північноатлантичний союз)

a coast [kəʊst] морське узбережжя

a channel ['tʃænl] канал

to separate ['seɪpɪt] відокремлювати

narrow ['nærəʊ] вузький

a strait [streɪt] протока

total ['təʊtl] загальний
sq km (square [skwɛə] kilometer) – км²

a border ['bɔ:də] кордон

to border (on) – межувати (з)

an isle [aɪl] острів (*noem.*)

to include [ɪn'klu:d] включати

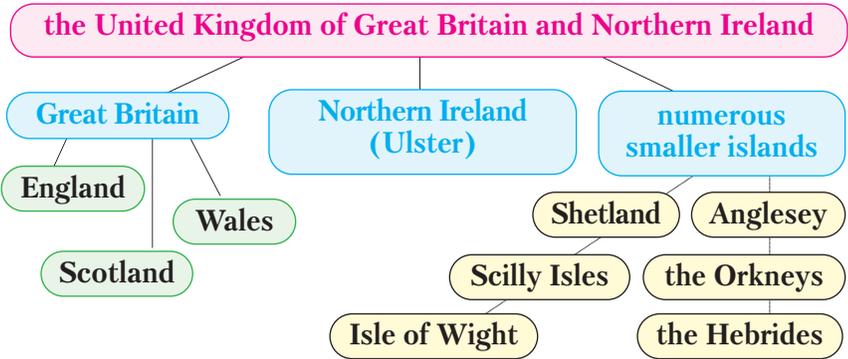
to surround [sə'raʊnd] оточувати

shallow ['ʃæləʊ] мілкий

Norwegian [nɔ:'wi:dʒ(ə)n] норвезький

Look at the **structure** of the UK:

structure [ˈstrʌktʃə] структура



*Which parts does the UK consist of?
Which parts does Great Britain include?
How is Northern Ireland also called?
What islands is the UK made up of?*

The United Kingdom is the **union** of four countries: **England**, **Scotland**, **Wales** and **Northern Ireland**.

They used to be separate nations.

The capital of the UK is London.

The capital of England is London, of Scotland – Edinburgh, of Wales – Cardiff and of Northern Ireland – Belfast.

Point to the parts of the UK and their capitals on the map.

People in the UK are called **British** but they have different nationalities. They are the English, the **Scotch**, the **Welsh** and the **Irish**.

The UK is a home for 60.2 million people, of which 50.4 million live in towns and cities.

Official languages are English, Welsh (26 per cent (%)) of the **population** of

a union [ˈjuːnjən] об'єднання
England [ˈɪŋɡlənd] Англія
Scotland [ˈskɒtlənd] Шотландія
Wales [weɪlz] Уельс
Northern Ireland [ˈnɔːðən ˈaɪələnd] Північна Ірландія

the British [ˈbrɪtɪʃ] британці
the Scotch [skɒtʃ] шотландці
the Welsh [welfʃ] уельські
the Irish [ˈaɪ(ə)rɪʃ] ірландці

60.2 – sixty point two
nine out of ten – 9 з 10-ти
population [ˌpɒpjʊˈleɪʃ(ə)n] населення

Wales) and **Scottish** (about 60,000 people in Scotland).

Who lives in the UK?

What languages do they speak?

The landscape of the UK is various. There are mountains in the northern **Highlands** of Scotland. It is a home of the **deer** and the **eagles**.

Northern England Mountains and the Cambrian Mountains in Wales are much **lower**.

In the south of England are the famous **chalk hills**, some of them form the Dover **Cliffs**.

The southern and south-eastern parts of the island form **lowlands**.

The lowest point of the UK is Fenland in England (4 metres below **sea level**), the highest one is Ben Nevis in Scotland (1,343 m).

The rivers of the country are short and of no great importance for shipping. The longest river is the Severn (354 km), the Thames is the **deepest** one.

The main ports of the UK are London, Liverpool, Manchester, Hull and Glasgow. They have beautiful **harbours**.

Scottish [ˈskɒtɪʃ] шотландський

a highland [ˈhaɪlənd] плато, нагір'я

a deer (*pl. deer*) [diə] олень

an eagle [ˈi:gl] орел

low [ləʊ] низький

a hill [hɪl] височина, пагорб

chalk [tʃɔ:k] крейда

a cliff [klɪf] обрив, стрімчак

a lowland [ˈləʊlənd] низина, долина

sea level — рівень моря

deep [di:p] глибокий

a harbour [ˈhɑ:bə] гавань

2. Listening.

a) Look at the pictures and listen to Adam's story. Match the symbols with the four parts of the United Kingdom and say which part the boy lives in.



a red rose



a daffodil



a thistle



a shamrock

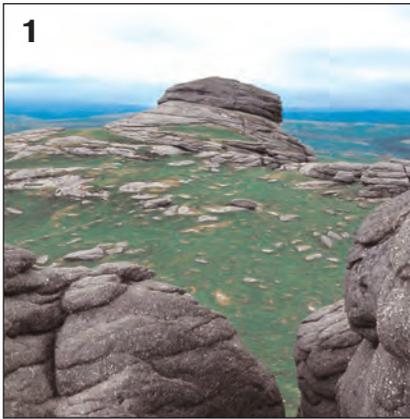
b) Listen to Adam's story again. Say which words he uses in his report. Write them down into your exercise-book.

- | | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> country | <input type="checkbox"/> England | <input type="checkbox"/> a forest |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Great Britain | <input type="checkbox"/> a mountain | <input type="checkbox"/> an ocean |
| <input type="checkbox"/> the UK | <input type="checkbox"/> a hill | <input type="checkbox"/> a sea |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a lake | <input type="checkbox"/> a cliff | <input type="checkbox"/> a plain |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a lowland | <input type="checkbox"/> a lake | <input type="checkbox"/> a harbour |

c) Retell Adam's story. Have you learnt some new facts?

3. Look at the pictures and match them with the words which mean landscapes. Talk about the landscape of the UK.

A mountain, a hill, a chalk cliff, an ocean, a sea, a river, a lake, a strait, a harbour, a plain, an island, a coast, a highland.





For example:

Let me say a few words about picture 1. I see mountains in it. I think it is a highland. There are mountains in the north of Great Britain in Scotland and in the west in Wales. ...

4. a) Read the text and say what it deals with. Who is it written by? What do you know about the author?

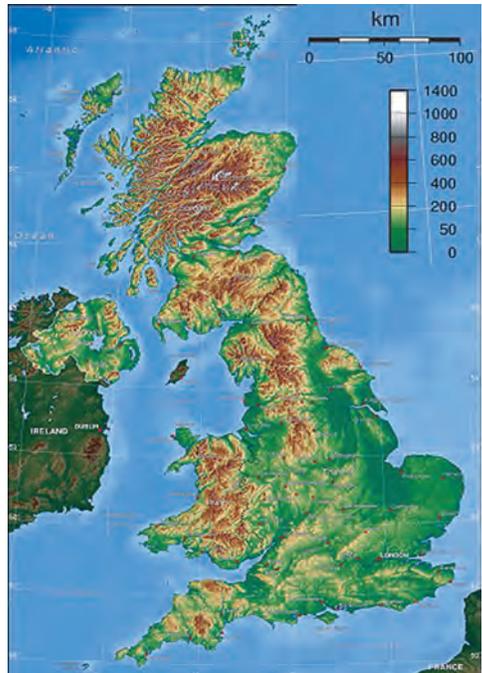
If you look at the map of Great Britain, you'll see two islands. In the old days, a long, long while ago, these islands were in the same place and the stormy sea roared round them, just as it roars now. But the sea was not alive then, with great ships and brave sailors sailing to and from all parts of the world. The people living on these islands knew nothing of the rest of the world and the rest of the world knew nothing of them. Once some ancient people came in ships to these islands and found that they produced tin and lead. They traded with the Britons for these metals and gave them other useful things in exchange.

At that time the whole country was covered with forests. The greater part of it was very misty and cold. The Britons planted little corn, but they could make cloth and were clever in basket-work. Such were the conditions of life of the ancient Britons when the Romans came one late summer morning of the year 55 B.C. (before Christ).

After Charles Dickens

b) Say what you have learnt about the British and ancient Great Britain. How were they called? What did they used to do?

5. Look at the maps of the United Kingdom, answer the questions and talk about its structure, location and landscapes.



- 1) Where is the United Kingdom of Great Britain situated?
- 2) What islands does the UK include?
- 3) Where do the British Isles lie?
- 4) What are the British Isles separated from the continent by?
- 5) What is the UK washed by?
- 6) What parts does the United Kingdom consist of?
- 7) How is the largest part called?
- 8) Where do the parts of the United Kingdom lie?
- 9) Where are the mountains located in the UK?
- 10) Where is the lowland situated?

6. Work in pairs. Make up a quiz for your friend: ask some questions about the UK.

For example:

- 1) What is the official name of Great Britain?
- 2) What is the capital of England?
- 3) What rivers of Great Britain do you know?
- 4) Which sights of the UK are well-known?
- 5) What does the flag of Great Britain look like?

7. Describe the photo given below.



8. Make a report “Travelling to the UK”.
Write if you would like to travel to Great Britain. Why?
Finish your report with one of the sayings given below.

East or west home is best. <i>A proverb</i>	В гостях добре, а вдома краще. <i>Прислів'я</i>
A man travels the world over in search of what he needs and returns home to find it. <i>Moore</i>	Людина подорожує світом у пошуках того, що їй потрібно, і повертається додому, щоб знайти це. <i>Т. Мур</i>
The world is a book and those who do not travel, read only a page. <i>Augustine, St.</i>	Світ – це книга, і той, хто не подорожує, читає лише одну сторінку. <i>Св. Августин</i>
On this shrunken globe, men can no longer live as strangers. <i>Stevenson, Adlai</i>	На цій тісній планеті люди не можуть більше жити як чужі. <i>А. Стівенсон</i>

II. Grammar Section

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

Revision: Plural of Nouns

Vocabulary

noun – іменник
singular (form) – одиниця
plural (form) – множина
pronounce – вимовляти
sound – звук
vowel – голосний
consonant – приголосний
voiceless – глухий
voiced – дзвінкий

ending – закінчення
except – окрім
exception – виключення
countable – злічуваний
uncountable – незлічуваний
matter – речовина
substance – речовина
abstract – абстрактний

1. **Revision.** a) Complete the sentences about the rules of forming *the plural of nouns* and make up the tables.

noun + -(e)s		
[s]	[z]	[ɪz]
After ...	...	...
an aunt - aunts	a cousin - cousins	a niece - nieces
...

- 1) To form the plural of ___ we add the ending ___ to the ___.
- 2) This ending is pronounced [s] after ___ except ___.
- 3) This ending is pronounced [z] after ___ except ___.
- 4) This ending is pronounced [ɪz] after the sounds ___.

If the noun ends in:				
	-s, -ss, ...	...	...	...
+es	a bus - buses ...	a fly - flies ...	a hero - heroes ...	a wife - wives ...

- 1) The ending **-es** is added if the noun ends in ___ .
- 2) The letter **y** is changed into ___ before the ending **-es**.
- 3) The letter **-f / -fe** is changed into ___ before the ending **-es**.

EXCEPTIONS:		
man - ...	foot - ...	sheep - ...
woman - ...	tooth - ...	deer - ...
child - ...	goose - ...	fish - ...
mouse - ...	ox - ...	swine - ...

b) Form the plural of the following nouns.

Son, task, man, aunt, husband, cake, pig, hand, song, sister, brother, parent, room, deer, day, Sunday, holiday, letter, duty, house, family, foot, country, city, life, leaf, photo, potato, dress, mouse, fox, way.

c) Form the singular of the following nouns.

Lips, legs, geese, lines, streets, nieces, times, stories, melodies, dishes, halves, knives, heroes, types, women, teeth, shelves, classes, mice, pianos, uncles, sheep, boys.

d) Make up some sentences with the nouns of Ex. 1 (b, c).

2. Read the information about **countable** and **uncountable nouns**. Make some sentences with uncountable nouns.

The nouns can be **countable** and **uncountable** in English.

A **countable** noun has both a singular and a plural form, for example, one pen, two pens, three pens, etc.

A noun that is **uncountable** has no plural form and means something which cannot be counted, for example, 'water' or 'beauty'. We cannot count them, can we? You can say *two bottles or litres of water*, but you cannot say *two waters*.

Uncountable nouns are those which mean:

- 1) *matters and substances*: **butter, milk, bread, steel.**
- 2) *abstract nouns* – something that you cannot see or touch: **honesty, kindness, heat, news, information.**

Read the sentences with uncountable nouns and pay attention to the verbs:

The **milk** is fresh.

Kindness is a good quality.

Give me a glass of **water**. **The water** is hot.

The **news** was good. There was no bad **news**.

The **snow** is cold. There is no **snow** on the ground.

As you see, those uncountable nouns are used **only in the singular**. But there are some uncountable nouns in English which are used **only in the plural**. They are *paired things*: **scissors, trousers, spectacles, sneakers.**

The **scissors** were sharp.

The **sneakers** fit me well.

3. a) Read the text and find all the nouns. Say if they are in the singular or in the plural forms. Are they countable or uncountable? Change the nouns into the singular/plural form if it is possible.

"Home sweet home", the British use these words to say how pleasant it is to be at home. Many English families live in flats, but most live in their own houses.

On the ground floor they usually have the dining-room, the sitting-room, the kitchen and the hall. There is a stand for hats, coats and umbrellas in the hall. The stairs lead you to the first floor. There are bedrooms, a bathroom and a lavatory on the first floor.

In front of the house they usually have a small garden, in which they grow flowers. At the back of the house you will seldom see swimming-pools full of water. There is a much larger garden with a lawn and some fruit-trees. It is very beautiful in spring, when the trees are in blossom and in winter, when there is snow on the trees. There is also a vegetable garden where they grow all kinds of vegetables, such as potatoes, cabbages, onions and tomatoes.

The beauty of a garden is that you can make it on your own. The British spend a lot of free time in the garden. But although they have much work there they are fond of gardening.

b) Speaking skills. Talk about the English home. Would you like to have such a house. Do you like English traditions?

4. **Listening.** Listen to the sentences your teacher will read and write down all the nouns. Say if they are in the singular or in the plural forms. Are they countable or uncountable?

5. a) Match the things in the pictures with matters or substances and say what they are made of.

For example: A vase is made of glass.

Glass, steel, clay, bronze, wheat, meat, silver, metal, leather, gold, plastic, wood, paper, milk, stone, cotton.



b) Say if the nouns are countable or uncountable, if they are in the singular or in the plural forms. Make the sentences in which matters or substances are subjects.

For example: Glass is used for making windows and bottles.

6. a) Read the example and make the sentences with the words **many/few/a few/ much/little/a little**.

багато / мало / трохи

many / few / a few
before countable nouns

much / little / a little
before *uncountable* nouns

We have got **many** books. We have **much** news.
There are **few** men in the room. He has got **little** information.
I have got **a few** newspapers. There is **a little** sugar in the cup.

b) Work in pairs. Act out the situation: your friend offers you to do something after classes. Agree or disagree and explain that you have **much / little / a little** free time (homework, housework).

7. Complete the sentences with the proper form of verbs.

1. Be careful! The scissors ... very sharp (*to be*). 2. Water ... sugar and salt (*to dissolve*). 3. Salt ... the taste of food better (*to make*). 4. There ... little tea in the cup (*to be*). 5. These spectacles ... of special glass (*to be made*). 6. The heat .. me mad (*to drive*). I hate such weather. 7. There ... a little money in the purse (*to be*). 8. The news ... good (*to be*). 9. It seems that milk ... of honey (*to taste*). 10. Unfortunately there ... no love lost between Paul and Ann (*to be*).

8. Work in groups. Make up and act out the dialogue using the idioms and expressions given below:

- **for your information** (*spoken*) – is used when you are telling someone that they are wrong about a particular fact: *For your information, it doesn't usually snow in the UK in winter.*
- **my/our information is** – is used when you say what you know about a situation: *My information is that Great Britain continues to use pounds as its money.*
- **in all honesty** (*spoken*) – is used when telling someone that what you are saying is what you really think: *I must add, in all honesty, that I think the task ahead of us will be difficult.*

- **be good/bad news for** – if the facts about something are good or bad news for someone, they are likely to make life better or worse for them: *It is good news for us.*
- **a word/piece of advice:** some advice: *Let me give you a piece of advice.*

III. Oral Practice

The United Kingdom in Photos

1. Look at the flags of the parts of the UK and describe them.

This is the flag of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. The Union Flag is also known as *the Union Jack*. It symbolizes the union of the countries of the UK. It is made up of the individual flags of three countries in the Kingdom – England, Scotland and Ireland. You can see the red cross (red on white) and the white and red diagonal crosses on a blue ground on the Union Jack.



National Flags

England



Wales



Scotland



Northern Ireland



2. a) Look at the photos of famous people of the United Kingdom. What do you know about them? Can you name any more well-known British people?



Winston Churchill



Margaret Thatcher



David Beckham

Royal Family



Queen Elizabeth



Prince Charles



Prince William

b) Make a report about one of the famous people of the UK.

3. Work in groups of three. Read and act out the dialogue “Meeting People”. Make up and act out your own one.

Tom: Hello, Ben!

Ben: Hi, Tom! Have you met my friend Oleh?

Tom: How do you do, Oleh? Nice to meet you. I'm Tom Brown, Ben's classmate.

Oleh: How do you do, Tom. I am glad to meet you, too.

Tom: Do you speak English?

Oleh: Oh, yes, I do.

Ben: He speaks English very well.

Tom: Where are you from?

Oleh: I'm from Ukraine.

Ben: Oleh is here as a tourist. He is a son of my mother's friend. So he is staying with us.

Tom: Have you ever been to London?

Oleh: No, I haven't. I'm here for the first time.

Tom: What is your first impression?

Oleh: Oh! The city is beautiful.

Ben: Sorry, Tom. We are in a hurry. See you later.

Tom: Oh! I have to go, too. Oleh, have a nice time in London.

Oleh: Thank you very much.

Tom: I hope to see you again.

Oleh: So am I.

Tom: Well. Good bye, boys!

Ben: See you later, Tom.

Oleh: Good bye!

You can use the following sentences:

Let me introduce myself. I am ...

I want you to meet my friend. / Have you met ... ?

Meet my sister./Let me introduce ... to you.

Where do you study?/Where do you work?

Where do you come from?

I wish you good luck!/Have a good time!/Have a nice holiday!

Thank you. The same to you.

4. a) Look at the sights and say what you know about them.

Famous Landmarks



Houses of Parliament and Big Ben



Stone Hedge



Buckingham Palace



Trafalgar Square



Tower Bridge



Kent, the Weald



St. Paul's Cathedral

b) Work in pairs. Imagine that you are in London. Make up and act out the dialogue “Asking the Way” using the following sentences.

Does bus number... go to... ?

Where is the nearest bus stop (underground station)?

Is this the right way to... ?

Is this far (nearby)?

Can I get there by bus (the underground)?

Is it too far to go there on foot?

Could you tell me the way to... ?

How can I get to... Street?

What is the name of this street (square), please?

Does this street go to... ?

It's just round the corner (on the left, on the right).

Turn to the left (to the right).
Take the bus number...
Go straight ahead.

5. a) Look at the photos and talk about British food.

Food and Drink



More than four hundred years ago the British used to drink coffee. But in 1660 traders brought a new drink into Great Britain from China. It was called tea. The British liked it very much. And in 1750 tea was the most popular drink for all types and classes of people. By the way, a pound of tea (453,6 g) costs a third of worker's weekly wage!



Cereal



Eggs and Bacon



Fish and Chips



Christmas Pudding

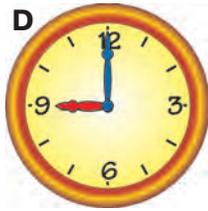
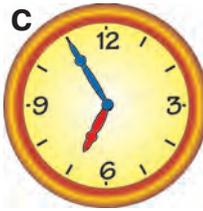
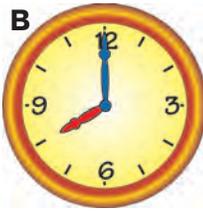
b) Say what your favourite dish is. What do you usually have for breakfast (dinner, supper)?

c) Work in pairs. Make up and act out the dialogue "At Dinner". Consult ex. 5, page 43.

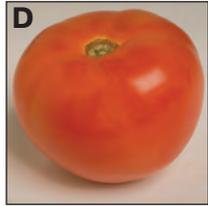
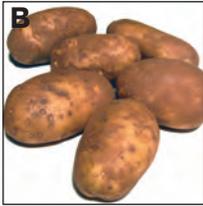
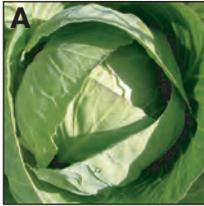
6. Listening.

Listen to the text and answer the questions.

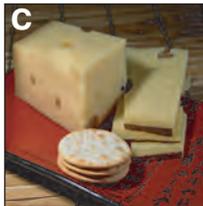
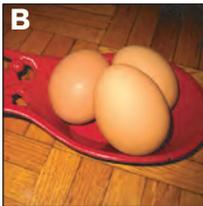
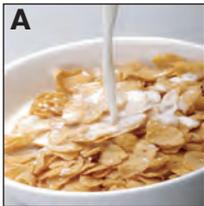
- Choose the correct item A, B, C or D.
- Say if the sentences are true (T) or false (F).
- What time does Mrs White have her breakfast?



- The main meal is breakfast in Great Britain, isn't it?
- What vegetables did the British use to have for breakfast?

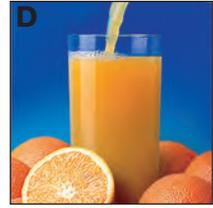


- Mrs White didn't eat cereal for breakfast, did she?
- What did the woman take for breakfast at first?



- She ate it with bread, didn't she?

What does Mrs White usually drink for breakfast?



She'll eat some toasts with butter, won't she?

7. a) Look at the photos and say what the favourite British sports are.

For example:

One of the favourite British sports is football. As far as I know it is also called soccer. Football is a game which is played by two teams of eleven players. The football-players try to kick a round ball into their opponents' goal.

Sports in the United Kingdom



Football



Cricket



Tennis



Rugby



Horse Racing



Grass-hockey

b) Say if you like these kinds of sports. Can you play them?

c) Work in groups. Make up and act out the dialogue: you are in London and have got a free evening; invite your friends to a sports competition (football match, tennis tournament, etc.). You can use the following sentences:

Are you interested in sport?

Are you good at tennis?

I like sport, but don't go in for anyone.

I prefer watching sports competitions.

I am only a sports fan.

Can we get tickets for a football match?

When does the football match start?

How can we get to the stadium?

What teams are playing?

It should be a great match.

The teamwork is good and the players are in excellent trim.

(Команда грає добре, гравці в чудовій формі.)

What's the score? *(Який рахунок?)*

I think the game will end with the score three to one.

Could we see a boxing match? / I'd like to see a ...

Would you care for a game of chess (tennis)? *(Як щодо гри в ... ?)*

How long have you been playing tennis?

- 8. Project work.** Find some interesting facts about sport, meals, sights, etc. in the United Kingdom. Prepare a report about them for your classmates.

Start your report with one of the sentences:

It is interesting to know that ...

Do you know that ... ?

IV. Reading

1. Before you start reading, talk to your friends how you spend your week-ends. What do you usually do at the week-ends?
2. Read the text and look up new words in a dictionary. Say what the text deals with.

Most people in Britain work a five-day week, from Monday to Friday. Schools, colleges and universities are also closed on Saturdays and Sundays. Therefore from Friday evening till Monday morning people are usually free.

Everyone looks forward to the week-end and when Friday comes along, as people leave work they say to each other, "Have a nice week-end." Then in Monday morning they ask, "Did you have a nice week-end?" or "What did you do at the week-end?"

Students, young people working away from home like to go away for the week-end. They may go home, go to stay with relatives or friends in different parts of the country or stay in a hotel or boarding house in the country or at the sea. Most towns in the UK are not more than four hours apart by train and some are much less.

Those who stay at home at the week-end try both to relax and to catch up with all the jobs they are too busy to do during the week. For women who go out to work these include housework, washing, shopping and sometimes gardening; for men – repairs and other odd jobs in the house, cleaning the car, mowing the lawn and gardening. Saturday morning is a very busy time for shopping, as this is the only day when people who are at work can shop for any length of time. On Sunday shops are closed all day.

On Saturday afternoon the most important sporting events of the week take place – football, rugby, cricket, tennis, horse-racing and other sports. Some men go and watch; others sit and watch the sports programmes on TV. In the late afternoon the sports results are announced on radio and television and sports editions of the evening papers are on sale.

Saturday evening is the favourite time for parties, dances, going to the pictures (cinema) or the theatre.

Having gone to bed late the night before, many people have a lie-in on Sunday morning. When they finally get up they have breakfast in bed. Some people even get up, get breakfast themselves and take it back to bed. While having breakfast people start reading the Sunday newspapers. There are at least eight newspapers which are published weekly on Sunday.

Sunday dinner is traditionally the most important family meal of the week. Most people have a "joint" (a piece of meat for roasting in the oven), which is roasted, then carved and served with roast and boiled potatoes and one or more other vegetables, such as peas or cabbage. Then comes the pudding, for example, apple pie and custard and finally tea or coffee.

Then comes tea time, that is 5–5.30. Besides the all-important tea there are sandwiches and cakes. Quite often friends are invited to Sunday tea.

Some people spend Sunday evening quietly at home, others go to see friends, go to a concert or to see a film.

3. Choose the correct item A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

- 1) ____ are the day-off in the United Kingdom
A. Friday and Saturday C. Sunday and Monday
B. Saturday and Sunday D. Friday and Monday
- 2) Most towns in the UK are not more than ____ apart by train.
A. one hour C. three hours
B. two hours D. four hours
- 3) The jobs that British women usually do at the week-end are ____ .
A. washing C. gardening
B. shopping D. cleaning the car
- 4) The sports results are announced on radio and television ____ .
A. in the morning on Saturday
B. in the late afternoon on Saturday
C. in the early morning on Sunday
D. in the late afternoon on Sunday
- 5) Roasted joint is usually served with ____ for Sunday dinner.
A. boiled potatoes C. cereal
B. fried potatoes D. fried eggs

4. Say if the following sentences are true (T) or false (F).

- 1) Schools, colleges and universities are closed on Saturdays and Sundays in the UK.
- 2) Students usually work to earn some money at the week-end.
- 3) On Saturday and Sunday shops are closed all day.
- 4) On Saturday afternoon the most important sporting events of the week take place – football, rugby, cricket, tennis, horse-racing and other sports.
- 5) Saturday evening is the favourite time for parties, dances, going to the pictures or the theatre.
- 6) The British never eat in bed.
- 7) There are no more than four newspapers which are published weekly on Sunday.
- 8) Saturday dinner is traditionally the most important family meal of the week.

- 9) The British usually cook the pudding for Sunday dinner.
- 10) Friends are very seldom invited to Sunday tea.

5. Make the plan of the text.

6. Retell the text using the sentences given below.

I have read the article under the title It is about ... (It deals with ...)

I have learnt that ... It was interesting to learn ...

7. Discuss the text with your classmates. Talk about British traditions of spending week-end.

V. Writing

1. a) Work in pairs: dictate and write down the words that you've learnt during your previous lessons. Make up sentences with them. If you don't know how to write the word, ask your friend to spell it.

b) Write an essay about the United Kingdom. You can write about location, structure, landscape, population or traditions of the United Kingdom.

2. Write down the sentences using structure *there is/there are* and the words *many/few/a few/much/little/a little*. Find the nouns and say if they are in the singular/plural form, they are countable or uncountable.

For example: *Scotchmen on the stadium*

There were many Scotchmen on the stadium.

Scotchmen – plural, countable; *stadium* – singular, countable.

Sportsmen in the gymnasium; text-books in the school bags; water in the bottle; snow on the ground; horses in a horse race; a knife on the table; mountains on the island; news in the article; newspapers in the mail box; children in the classroom; trousers in the shop; Welshmen in the court; rivers in the country.

3. Fill in the blanks with uncountable nouns and write down the sentences.

1. He gave me a word of good 2. We write with a piece of ... on the blackboard. 3. I bought a loaf of ... at the baker's. 4. We have ...

that she has returned to this country. 5. Mr. Black usually drinks a cup of green ... in the morning. 6. She prefers to drink a glass of ... with honey before bedtime. 7. There is much ... in the swimming-pool. 8. When did you call to Mike the last time? Is there any ... of him? 9. My grandfather worked a lot because he had to earn 10. I had a little free ... therefore I read newspapers.

4. Write the rules "Plural form of Nouns". Give your examples.
5. Work in pairs. Make the plural or singular form of the noun your friend says. Then write the sentences with these words.
6. **Signing the envelope.**
 - a) Read the information given below and sign the envelope.

As Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English says, the word "**letter**" means "*a written or printed message that is usually put in **an envelope and sent by mail***". The envelope is an essential part of the letter. Nobody (except your pen friend) sees your letter. The envelope is seen by many people who work in a post-office. If the address is written correctly, your addressee can receive your letter in time.

There are some rules how to sign the envelope.

The letters can be both private and official.

- 1) If the letter is official, the address should be printed.
- 2) The address is written in the bottom right-hand corner.
- 3) The number of a building should be written before the name of the street, the city, etc.
- 4) The words *street, road, avenue* can be abbreviated: St. (Str.), Rd., Ave.: Haygate St., Fifth Rd., Lexington Ave. If there is a number of the street, it should be printed: 10 Stand Str.
- 5) The order of the address is the following:
 - 1st line: the addressee's name (isn't written when you write the letter to the organization and don't know the name);
 - 2nd line: title, post (isn't written when the address is a home);
 - 3rd line: the name of the organization, firm, institution (isn't written when the address is a home);
 - 4th line: the number of a building and the name of the street (the number of a flat after comma);
 - 5th line: city (town), state in the USA or county in the UK (can be abbreviated), ZIP code;
 - 6th line: country (is usually underlined).

- 6) In Great Britain all lines are usually written with commas. Lines have no commas in the USA.
- 7) Return address is written in the top left-hand corner.
- 8) The word *Mr.* can be changed *Esq.* (in Great Britain).

For Example:

R.S.Jones, Esq.
 Chairman,
 A. Smith & Co., Ltd.,
 12 City New Road,
 London, E.C.I.
England

Mrs. Helen Brown,
 Manager,
 A.B. Green & Co., Ltd
 5 Wall St.,
 Dursley, Glos.,
England

The Modern Machine Tool Company, Ltd.
 3 Broadway Str.
 New York, NY 7712
USA

And this is an example of the envelope of a private letter:



Below you can find how the state in the USA and counties in the UK are abbreviated.

Counties of Great Britain			
Argyllshire	<i>Argyl.</i>	Buckinghamshire	<i>Bucks.</i>
Bedfordshire	<i>Beds.</i>	Cambridgeshire	<i>Cambs.</i>
Berkshire	<i>Berks.</i>	Caernarvonshire	<i>Carn.</i>

Counties of Great Britain			
Cheshire	<i>Ches.</i>	Middlesex	<i>Midds./</i>
Cornwall	<i>Corn.</i>		<i>Midd'x/Mx.</i>
Cumberland	<i>Cumb.</i>	Monmouthshire	<i>Mon.</i>
Denbighshire	<i>Den.</i>	Northamptonshire	<i>Northants/</i>
Derbyshire	<i>Derbs./Derb.</i>		<i>Northn.</i>
Devonshire	<i>Devon.</i>	Nottinghamshire	<i>Notts.</i>
Flintshire	<i>Flints./Flint.</i>	Oxfordshire	<i>Oxon.</i>
Glamorganshire	<i>Glam.</i>	Pembrokeshire	<i>Pemb.</i>
Gloucestershire	<i>Glos.</i>	Somersetshire	<i>Soms.</i>
Hampshire	<i>Hants.</i>	Staffordshire	<i>Staffs.</i>
Hertfordshire	<i>Herts.</i>	Warwickshire	<i>Warw.</i>
Huntingdonshire	<i>Hunts.</i>	Wiltshire	<i>Wilts.</i>
Lancashire	<i>Lancs.</i>	Worcestershire	<i>Wo./Worcs.</i>
Leicestershire	<i>Li./Lincs.</i>	Yorkshire	<i>Yks./Yorks.</i>

States in the USA			
Alabama	<i>AL</i>	Mississippi	<i>MS</i>
Alaska	<i>AK</i>	Missouri	<i>MO</i>
Arizona	<i>AZ</i>	Montana	<i>MT</i>
Arkansas	<i>AR</i>	Nebraska	<i>NE</i>
California	<i>CA</i>	Nevada	<i>NV</i>
Colorado	<i>CO</i>	New Hampshire	<i>NH</i>
Connecticut	<i>CT</i>	New Jersey	<i>NJ</i>
Delaware	<i>DE</i>	New Mexico	<i>NM</i>
District of Columbia	<i>DC</i>	New York	<i>NY</i>
Florida	<i>FL</i>	North Carolina	<i>NC</i>
Georgia	<i>GA</i>	North Dakota	<i>ND</i>
Hawaii	<i>HI</i>	Ohio	<i>OH</i>
Idaho	<i>ID</i>	Oklahoma	<i>OK</i>
Illinois	<i>IL</i>	Oregon	<i>OR</i>
Indiana	<i>ID</i>	Pennsylvania	<i>PA</i>
Iowa	<i>IA</i>	Rhode Island	<i>RI</i>
Kansas	<i>KS</i>	South Carolina	<i>SC</i>
Kentucky	<i>KY</i>	South Dakota	<i>CD</i>
Louisiana	<i>LA</i>	Tennessee	<i>TN</i>
Maine	<i>ME</i>	Vermont	<i>VT</i>
Maryland	<i>MD</i>	Virginia	<i>VA</i>
Massachusetts	<i>MA</i>	Washington	<i>WA</i>
Minnesota	<i>MN</i>	Wisconsin	<i>WI</i>
Michigan	<i>MI</i>	Wyoming	<i>WY</i>

b) Work with maps of the United Kingdom to find the names of streets of towns and cities in different counties and sign 5 envelopes.

c) Try to name not less than 10 counties of the UK and 10 states of the USA. Play a game: who can name more counties/states.

7. Internet Skills: Internet diaries.

a) Read the information and text given below.

Many people in the world **keep a diary**. A diary is a book in which you write down the things that happen to you each day. Some people keep Internet diaries. Reading them you can learn how people live in different countries.

And here is a story about five days in the life of a teenager-girl during a school holiday taken from her Internet Dairy.

Day One *** Day One *** Day One *** Day One

I've had an OK day today. I got up at 12 midday, ate cookie crisp for breakfast. Mum went out to **Tescos** during the afternoon. I wasn't on my own too long though. Mum only bought food for lunch.

I checked my mobile phone during lunch – one of my friends texted me early in the morning and I'd only just noticed it! I sent back a reply and apologized for not replying sooner.

After lunch I sat around watching **telly** and finishing doing my English / History / German / Science homework.

Had dinner at about 6:30, I had a microwaveable pizza and crinkle chips. I went upstairs, finished off my English homework, I listened to Avril Lavigne and Dido for a while, came back downstairs at about 7:15, came onto the internet. Watched *Emmerdale*, then *Coronation Street* and am now watching *Eastenders*.

Tesco is a supermarket.

Telly is slang for television.

Emmerdale, **Coronation Street** and **Eastenders** are all Soap Operas.

Day Two *** Day Two *** Day Two *** Day Two

I woke up at 10:45, Mum and I went to town. Then, we phoned mum's mate and her daughter (my mate) to ask if we could come round afterwards, as we hadn't seen each other for months!

We stayed at our friends' house for an hour and a half – during that time my mate and me browsed the internet. Afterwards we went to Tescos to buy something for dinner – microwaveable Indian meal for three (mum, dad, me).

Day Three *** Day Three *** Day Three *** Day Three

I woke up at 10 a.m., I think. Mum and I went back into Maidstone today, as we needed to get the Sunday Roast stuff for, well, Sunday. We also bought fish and chips for lunch and I bought some new funky crayola spider pens. We popped in to Sainsburys on our way back home.

Ever since then, I have been surfing the internet, eating dinner (sausages, mash, beans) and watching a bit of TV.

Day Four *** Day Four *** Day Four *** Day Four

Mum went to work today, I did some more homework and in the afternoon I surfed the internet. Mum had cooked lunch for me before she went. I also prayed at about 2 pm.

Now watching channel FIVE.

I'm afraid that's all I've done today.

Day Five *** Day Five *** Day Five *** Day Five

I woke up at 2 p.m. and so did my mum. We went to Tesco at 3:30 p.m. – where mum kept meeting her friends and we chatted for 2 hours! When we got home, it was already time for dinner (sausage, egg and chips). Afterwards, I did more homework until 2 a.m. – and I'm not joking!

- b) Retell the information about one of these days using indirect speech.
- c) Discuss the text with your classmates. Is the life of the girl interesting in your opinion? Is it like yours?
- d) Write a dairy about your life during a week.

V. Time for Fun

1. Do the crossword “The United Kingdom”.

Across: 1. One of the most popular sports in the UK. 2. The capital of Northern Ireland. 3. One of the islands of the UK. 4. The capital of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. 5. The ocean washed the UK.

6. Make a report about one of the sights of London.
7. Prepare your project work (ex. 8, p. 182).
8. Write a letter to your pen friend from the UK and ask everything you want to know about his country. Sign the envelope.
9. **Project Work.** Write an article for a school wall-newspaper "Well-known people of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland". You can write about a British actor or an actress, a singer, a member of the royal family, a politician, a scientist or any person who played or plays an important role in the history of the UK. Add some photos.
10. Plan your trip to the UK and tell your friends about it.

Home Reading

1. Read the legends and look up new words in a dictionary.

A Welsh legend goes that in the 13th century, Llewellyn, Prince of North Wales, had a palace there. He had a faithful dog, Gelert, that went with him everywhere and that he was very fond of. But one day the Prince went out hunting and he told Gelert to stay at home and guard the Prince's son. Gelert obediently lay down by the cradle of the baby and Llewellyn went away.

When he returned in the evening, Gelert came out joyfully to meet him and the Prince was horrified to see that the baby's cradle was overturned, the bed clothes and the floor were covered with blood and there was blood round Gelert's mouth. The baby was nowhere to be seen. The Prince thought the dog had killed the child and wild with rage and fear he drew his sword and thrust in into Gelert's heart. The dying cry of the dog was followed by a child's cry. Llewellyn looked round and there, under the torn and bloodstained blankets, was his baby son, quite safe. And beside it was the body of a huge wolf that Gelert had killed in defending his master's son.

Llewellyn was so filled with sorrow that it is said he never smiled again. He buried Gelert in the place which has been known as Beddgelert, which means "The Grave of Gelert".

As you know the thistle is the national symbol of Scotland. This is how, according to the legend, that plant came to be chosen as a badge, in preference to any other.

In very ancient times the Norsemen (how the Normans were called earlier) once landed somewhere on the east coast of Scotland.

They wanted to win the Scots and settle in the country. The Scots assembled with their arms and took their stations behind the river Tay, the largest in Scotland, at the only ford. As they arrived late in the day, weary and tired after a long march, they pitched their camp and rested, not expecting the enemy before the next day.

The Norsemen, however, were near; noticing that no guards or sentinels protected the camp, they crossed the Tay, intending to take the Scots by surprise and slaughter them in their sleep. To this end, they took off their shoes so as to make the least noise possible. But one of the Norsemen stepped on a thistle. The sudden and sharp pain he felt cause him to shriek. The alarm was given in the Scots' camp. The Norsemen were put to flight. Thanks to unexpected help from the thistle, the Scots took it as their national emblem.

This is the Irish legend about the red right hand which we can see on the Irish coat of arms.

The Vikings from Scandinavia on their way to Ireland, Greenland and Vinland in the 8-10 centuries stopped over in Ireland to fill their boats with food and water.

Once on returning home two Viking chiefs decided that one of them would become the king of Ireland. As Viking did not fight among themselves, it was decided that the one who would first touch Irish soil would become King.

They set off in their big boats, the race between the two big boats was very even and each crew did everything to win the race. When they were quite close to the shore Heremon O'Neil, that was the name of the Viking chief that became king, cut off his right hand and threw it on the land. It is due to this that the red right hand been a part of the coat of arms of Ireland ever since.

- 2.** Prepare some questions and tasks for your classmates about the legends you have read:
 - a) choose the correct item A, B, C or D to complete the sentences;
 - b) say if the sentences are true or false.
- 3.** Retell the legends using the sentences:

I have read some ... legends. They are about ... (The Welsh legend deals with ...) It is (isn't) interesting. I (don't) like it because ... It was interesting to learn ... I didn't know that ... I like most of all...
- 4.** Tell your friends what Ukrainian and English legends you know.

Check Yourself!

Choose the correct item a, b, c or d.

Complete the sentences.

1. **The east coast of the United Kingdom is washed ___ the North Sea.**

- a) by
- b) with
- c) in
- d) at

2. **Northern Ireland borders ___ the Republic of Ireland.**

- a) in
- b) on
- c) with
- d) by

3. **The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland is separated from France by ____ .**

- a) the Atlantic ocean
- b) the Norwegian Sea
- c) the North Sea
- d) the English Channel

4. **The capital of Wales is ____ .**

- a) Edinburgh
- b) Cardiff
- c) Belfast
- d) Daffodil

5. **Find the wrong item.**

- a) A continent is a large mass of land surrounded by sea.
- b) A hill is an area of land that is higher than the land around it, like a mountain but smaller.
- c) An island is a piece of land completely surrounded by water.
- d) A mountain is the solid dry part of the Earth's surface.

6. **Change the sentence from direct into indirect speech using a correct variant given below:**

He said, "I shall go to the south of Wales next week."

- a) He said that he would go to the south of Wales the next week.
- b) He said that he will go to the south of Wales the next week.
- c) He said that he shall go to the south of Wales next week.
- d) He said that he is going to the south of Wales next week.

7. Choose the proper form of the verb 'to be'.

He said that there ... much snow on the ground that day.

- a) is
- b) are
- c) was
- d) were

8. Find the sentence with the word in the plural.

- a) The child was eating cheese.
- b) His mother's niece lives in Great Britain.
- c) Kindness is a very good quality.
- d) The British used to eat cereal for breakfast.

9. Find an uncountable noun which is used in the plural form.

- a) news
- b) honesty
- c) scissors
- d) Englishmen

10. Find the correct sentence.

- a) I have many free time on Saturdays.
- b) I has a little free time on Saturdays.
- c) We have much free time on Saturdays.
- d) He has a few free time on Saturdays.

11. Choose the correct variant to translate the sentence.

Великобританія є частиною Європи.

- a) England is the part of Europe.
- b) Great Britain is the part of Europe.
- c) The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland is the part of Europe.
- d) The British Isles are the part of Europe.

12. Choose the proper sentence.

Imagine that you meet somebody for the first time in England. He says to you, "How do you do?" You answers:

- a) So am I.
- b) And what about you?
- c) Thank you, I'm fine.
- d) How do you do?

UNIT 6 *** UKRAINE

I. Language Material

1. a) Listen and repeat the words in the right column.
Pay attention to the correct pronunciation.
b) Read the sentences in the left column. Pay attention to the proper intonation.
c) Say what you know about Ukraine.
Answer the questions in the left column.

Ukraine is situated in the south-eastern part of Central Europe and has its own territory, **government** and **state** symbols of the country .

What are the state symbols of Ukraine?

It **borders** on 7 countries on land and 5 countries on sea.

What countries does Ukraine border on land/on sea?

The territory of Ukraine is mostly a **level**, **treeless plain**, which is called "**steppe**". There are **mixed forests** in the north and in the west of the country. The **forest-steppe** is situated in the central part of Ukraine.

There are the Crimean Mountains in the Crimean **peninsula** and the Carpathians in the west, but they are not very high.

Which part of Ukraine do you live?

What trees grow in your native place?

What mountains are situated in Ukraine?

There are more than 73 thousand rivers in Ukraine. **Over** a hundred of them are longer than 100 kilometres. The main Ukrainian river is the Dnipro. It is the third in **length** in Europe after the Volga and the **Danube**.

What Ukrainian rivers do you know?

a government [ˈɡʌvnmənt]

уряд

state [steɪt] держава, державний

to border [ˈbɔːdə] межувати

level [ˈlevl] плаский

treeless [ˈtriːlɪs] безлісний

a plain [pleɪn] рівнина

steppe [step] степ

mixed forest [ˈmɪkstˈfɒrɪst]

мішаний ліс

forest-steppe — лісостеп

a peninsula [prɪˈnɪnsjələ]

півострів

over [ˈəʊvə] понад

length [leŋθ] довжина

the Danube [ˈdænjuːb]

Дунай

There are two seas in Ukraine. Look at the map of Ukraine. The Kerch Strait **links** the Black Sea with the Sea of Azov and the **Bosphorus** – with the **Sea of Marmara**.

Name the seas of Ukraine and point at them on the map.

Ukraine has the 5th largest **population** in Europe (after Germany, Italy, the UK, France) and it is the 21st most **populous** country in the world. It **accounts** for **7.3%** (*seven point three per cent*) of European and 1% of the **global** population.

The first Ukrainian national **population census** was **held** on December, 5th, 2001 (the **previous** one **took place** in 1989 when Ukraine was a part of the **USSR**). **According** to the **data** of that census, more than 48 million people live in Ukraine.

How many people live in Ukraine?

to link [lɪŋk] з'єднувати
the Bosphorus ['bɔ:spərəs] протока Босфор
the Sea of Marmara ['mɑ:mæ] Мармурове море

a population [ˌpɒpjʊˈleɪʃ(ə)n] населення

populous ['pɒpjʊləs] густонаселений

to account [ə'kaʊnt] налічувати

global ['glɔ:ʊbəl] світовий

a population census ['sen-səs] перепис населення

to hold (*past held*) – проводити

previous ['pri:vjəs] попередній

to take place – відбуватись

USSR – СРСР

according [ə'kɔ:dɪŋ] відповідно до

data (*pl*) ['deɪtə] дані

2. Listening.

a) Look at the pictures and listen to Tom talking about his summer holidays. Say what place he is describing.



the Carpathian Mountains



the Black Sea coast



the bank of the Dnipro River

b) Listen to the Tom's story again. Say which words he uses in his speech. Write them down into your exercise-book.

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> a coast | <input type="checkbox"/> a bank | <input type="checkbox"/> a beach |
| <input type="checkbox"/> the Black Sea | <input type="checkbox"/> the Sea of Azov | <input type="checkbox"/> the Dnipro River |
| <input type="checkbox"/> to surf | <input type="checkbox"/> to boat | <input type="checkbox"/> to dive |
| <input type="checkbox"/> an island | <input type="checkbox"/> a peninsula | <input type="checkbox"/> a mountain |

c) Say where you would like to spend your summer holidays.

3. a) Read the text and say what it deals with.

My native town is situated in the Poltava region.

There are no theatres and multistorey buildings in my town. But I like it very much. I was born here, my parents and friends live here – and as for me, it is the best place in the world.

Some people think that the life in small towns is dull and is not interesting. But it's not true. Every morning I get up and breathe in fresh air. In summer it smells of fresh grass and flowers, in winter it is a smell of frost and snow.

My native town becomes very beautiful in early spring when everything is in blossom. This time I like to walk down the street: there are many chestnut-trees, mountain ashes and limes there. Children like to spend their free time in the recreation Park. There are many side-shows there. Those who prefer dancing may go to a disco. It's very popular with young people and teenagers.

It's a pity we have no concert-halls or theatres but you may go to the cinema and watch a film there. There are two big stadiums in our town. You can go there if you like sports.

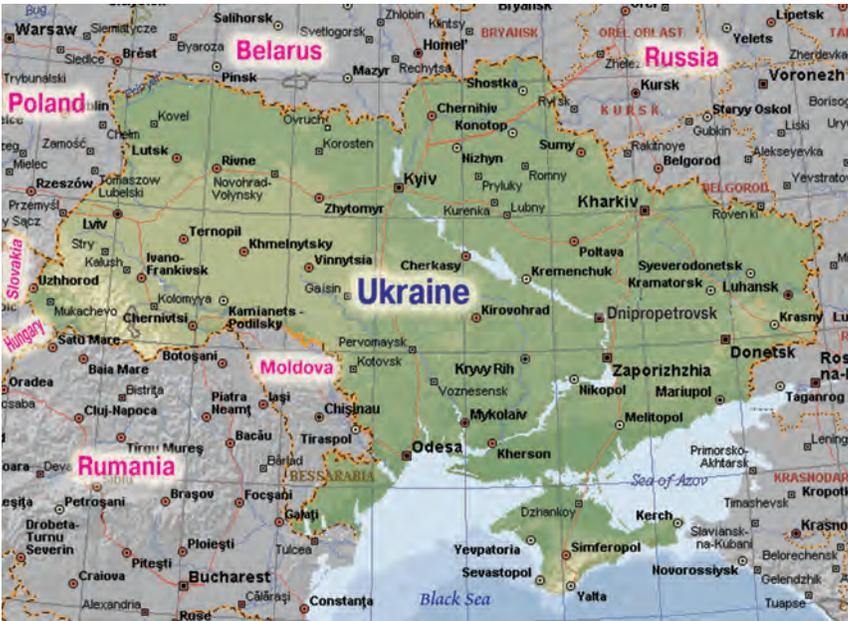
But the main thing is our nature. There is a river, two lakes, a forest near my native town. You may swim, boat, fish, gather berries and mushrooms, play paintball there. In winter you may ski and skate there.

b) Speaking skills. Tell your classmates about your native place.

c) Say what sights there can be in a city (town, village)?

d) What regions of Ukraine do you know? Where are they situated? Point to them on a map.

4. Look at the map of Ukraine, answer the questions and talk about its landscape and location.



- 1) Where is Ukraine situated?
- 2) What countries does it border on?
- 3) What kind of landscape occupies the most territory of Ukraine?
- 4) Are there any mountains/seas there?
- 5) Where are they situated?
- 6) Are there many rivers in Ukraine?
- 7) Which are the longest ones?
- 8) Are there any lakes there?

5. Work in pairs. Ask your friend to find and point to any city, town, river, etc. of Ukraine as in the example.

For example:

P1: It is a city in the centre of Ukraine.

P2: Is it Kyiv?

P1: No, it isn't. You are wrong. It is to the south of Kyiv.

P2: Is it Vinnytsia?

P1: No, it isn't. You are wrong. It is to the east of Vinnytsia.

P2: Is it Cherkasy?

P1: Yes, it is. You are right.

6. a) Write the names of all regions of Ukraine and their main cities. Say where each region is located and which regions it borders on.

For example:

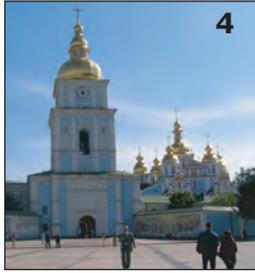
The Vinnytsia region is located in the centre of Ukraine. It borders on the Khmelnytsky, Zhytomyr, Kyiv, Cherkasy, Kirovohrad and Odesa regions.

Regions of Ukraine



- b) Work in groups. Make a report about any region of Ukraine: its nature (animals and plants), landscape, location. Tell your classmates about it: don't say any place-names. Your friends should guess what region you are telling about.
7. a) Look at the photos on pages 201-202 and say what you know about these sights.
b) Write a report about Kyiv.
8. Project work. Your friends from the UK come to visit you. They are going to stay for 10 days. Think your route of trip around Ukraine.

Use the sentences: We'll start our trip from Kyiv, the capital of Ukraine. There we'll see We will travel by ... from Kyiv to We'll stay there for ... days.



Sights of Kyiv: 1) Maidan Nezalezhnosti; 2) the Golden Gates; 3) the Bohdan Khmelnytsky Monument; 4) St. Sophia's Cathedral; 5) Kyiv-Pecherska Lavra; 6) Glory Park; 7) the Cabinet of Ministers; 8) Mariyinsky Park; 9) Paton Bridge; 10) The Memorial of World War II.

II. Grammar Section

Past Perfect Continuous

Revision: Present Perfect Continuous

Vocabulary

to be formed – утворюватись

by means of – за допомогою

an ending – закінчення

an auxiliary verb – допоміжне дієслово (e.g. *to be, to have, to do*)

a main verb – основне (змістове) дієслово

a subject – підмет

Present Participle (Participle I) –

дієприкметник теперішнього часу (*verb+ing*)

an interrogative/negative form – питальна/заперечна форма

to be placed – розміщатись, ставитись

a particle – частка

definite – певний, визначений

1. **Revision.** a) Complete the table and say how the Present Perfect Continuous Tense is formed.

The Formation of the Present Perfect Continuous Tense

I **have been working**.

He } ...

She } ...

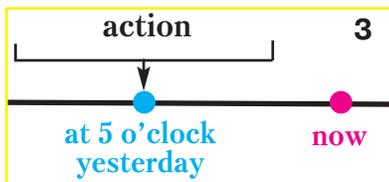
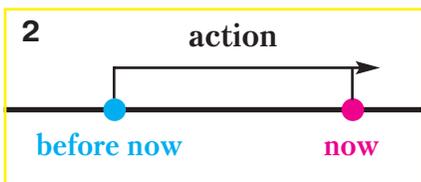
It } ...

We } ...

You } ...

They } ...

- b) Say which tenses (Present Continuous, Past Continuous or Present Perfect Continuous) these schemes show. Give your examples.



c) Answer the following questions.

- 1) What is your favourite subject? How long have you been studying it?
- 2) When did you begin to learn English? How long have you been studying it?
- 3) What foreign languages do you learn? Since when have you been learning them?
- 4) Where do you study? Since when have you been studying there?
- 5) Where do you live? How long have you been living there?

d) Make the interrogative and negative sentences.

- 1) I have been waiting for my cousin for an hour.
- 2) He has been reading the tale since two o'clock.
- 3) We have been preparing breakfast for two hours.
- 4) They have been working in this bank since 1995.
- 5) She has been talking about it since yesterday.

The Past Perfect Continuous Tense

2. Read the information and make some sentences to illustrate the rules of using the Past Perfect Continuous Tense.

The Formation of the Present Perfect Continuous Tense

The Past Perfect Continuous is formed by means of the auxiliary verb **to be** in the **Past Perfect** and **Present Participle (Participle I)** of the main verb.

I (he, she, it, we, you, they) had been working.

Tom said that his mother **had been working** at this school for ten years. — *Том сказав, що його мама працює у цій школі вже протягом десяти років (почала працювати 10 років тому і продовжувала працювати до того моменту, коли Том сказав про це).*

I explained that we **had been waiting** for him for twenty minutes. — *Я пояснив, що ми чекаємо на нього вже двадцять хвилин (дія почалася за 20 хвилин до того, як я сказав про це, і тривала до моменту мовлення.)*

In **the interrogative form had** of the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject.

The Past Perfect Continuous (as the Present Perfect Continuous) is used in the interrogative sentences (special questions) with the words **since**, **when** and **how long**.

Had you been talking about it all day long?

Чи ти говорив про це весь день (не припиняючи)?

How long had he been learning English? – *Як довго (до певного моменту у минулому) він вивчав англійську?*

Since when had they been living there?

З якого часу вони жили там?

In **the negative form** the negative particle **not** is placed after **had** of the auxiliary verb.

I **had not been studying** in that group. – *Я не навчався (не навчався до певного моменту у минулому) у тій групі.*

At that moment we **had not been waiting** there for half an hour. – *На той момент ми там не чекали (вже) півгодини (а до цього чекали).*

He said she **had not been sleeping** since 5 o'clock.

Він сказав, що вона не спить з п'ятої години (а до цього спала).

The Use of the Past Perfect Continuous Tense

The Past Perfect Continuous is used to express an action which began before a definite moment in the past, continued up to it and was or was not going on at that past moment.

I said I **had been cleaning** the room **for** an hour.

We knew she **had been teaching** English at our school **since** 2004.

Up to that moment we **had been cooking** soup **for** 40 minutes.

You **had been eating** soup **till** Dad came home.

If the verb has no continuous form (look p. 34), the Past Perfect is used instead of the Past Perfect Continuous.

I said I **had known** him for five years.

He said he **had been** at home all the time.

My grandparents wrote they **hadn't seen** them since 1999.

Monica said she **had preferred** figure skating since childhood.

3. Make up five sentences using the table and adding the main verbs.

I		I		learning English	for 5 years.
We		we		...	for 2 minutes.
You	said	you	had	...	for 10 minutes.
They	wrote	they	been	...	for half an hour.
He		he		...	for two hours.
She		she		...	since last year.
				...	since 1995.

4. Choose the correct form of the verb in brackets. Explain your choice.

- 1) He said he (*is doing his homework, did his homework, had done his homework, has been doing his homework, had been doing his homework*) since 3 o'clock.
- 2) She (*is working, works, worked, has worked, has been working, has been working*) as a guide at the Lutsk Museum of Local Lore since 2000 up to the present moment.
- 3) The English school children wrote that they never (*were, have been, had been, had been being*) in Kyiv.
- 4) Supper will be ready in a minute – dad (*is mashing, mashes, has mashed, has been mashing, had been mashing*) potatoes now.
- 5) Up to that moment the children (*were playing, played, had played, have been playing, had been playing*) in the garden for three hours.
- 6) ... you ... (*do ... want, are ... wanting, have ... wanted, have ... been wanting*) to make a tour around Kyiv now?
- 7) How long ... Maksym ... (*does ... watch, is ... watching, has ... watched, has ... been watching*) the film? I think it's time to do his homework.
- 8) He said they (*don't live, are not living, have not lived, have not been living, had not been living*) in this building for 5 years but he still (*remember, had remembered, had been remembering*) their neighbours' names.

5. Make interrogative/negative forms of the following sentences.

- 1) I had been waiting for my cousin for an hour.
- 2) He had been reading the tale since two o'clock.
- 3) We had been preparing breakfast for two hours.

- 4) They had been working in this bank since 1995.
 - 5) She had been talking about it since yesterday.
6. Change direct into indirect speech. Pay attention to the demonstrative pronouns and time-expressions which can be changed (consult p. 138).

Example:

Andriy said, “I **have been translating** the text for half an hour”. –
 Andriy said that he **had been translating** the text for half an hour.

- 1) I said, “I have been reading this story for ten minutes”.
- 2) Father said, “Mum has been cooking dinner since twelve o’clock”.
- 3) My parents said to me, “We have been working together since 1998”.
- 4) He said, “Your grandmother has been sleeping for half an hour”.
- 5) The teacher said, “You have been learning German for 9 years”.

7. a) Work in pairs. Ask your classmate:

if he/she learns English; when he/she began to study English; since when he/she has been learning English; how long he/she has been studying English; what he/she is doing now; how long he/she has been doing it; since when he/she has been studying at your school; how long he/she has been learning Geography/Chemistry/Algebra/Physics/Biology; where he/she lives; since when he/she has been living there.

b) Change his/her answers into indirect speech.

III. Oral Practice

Ukraine in Photos, Pictures, Schemes and Tables

1. Look at the state symbols of Ukraine, read the information and tell your friends about them. What are the symbols of your native town?

According to the Constitution of Ukraine the **state** symbols of the country are: the State Flag of Ukraine, the State **Coat of Arms** of Ukraine (The State Emblem), the State Anthem of Ukraine.

The State *Flag* is made of two horizontal bars of blue and yellow.

The main element of the Major State Coat of Arms of Ukraine is the Trident (*the Minor State Coat of Arms* – 1). The components of *the Major State Coat of Arms* (2) are elements of the Coats of Arms of the Cossack Army of Zaporizhzhia and the Galicia and Volyn Principality: a Cossack with a musket and a Golden Lion.

The State Anthem of Ukraine is **set to music** by Mykhailo Verbytsky and **verse** by Pavlo Chubynsky “Ukraine’s **Glory** Hasn’t Perished”.



2. Study the following schemes and tables and tell your classmates about population of Ukraine.

Urban Population		
Urban Population	Ukraine	32 million
	Kyiv	2,6 million
The most urbanized regions	Donetsk	90 %
	Luhansk	86 %
	Dnipropetrovsk	83 %

454 cities and towns



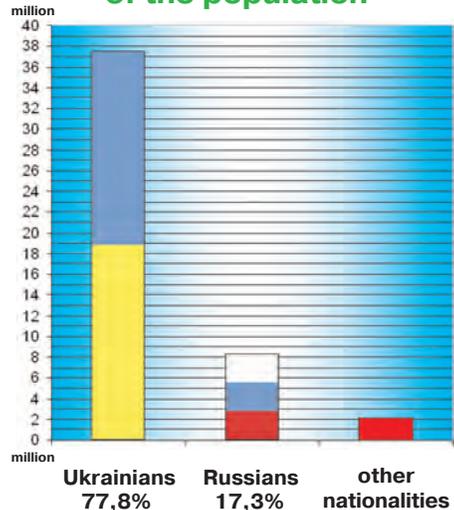
Rural Population		
The lowest rate of rural population	Donetsk	10 %
	Luhansk	14 %
	Dnipropetrovsk	17 %
	Kharkiv	21 %
	Zaporizhzhia	24 %
The most rural regions	Ternopil and Zakarpattia	59 %
	Ivano-Frankivsk and Chernivtsi	58 %
	Vinnytsia	56 %
	Rivne	55 %

Age composition

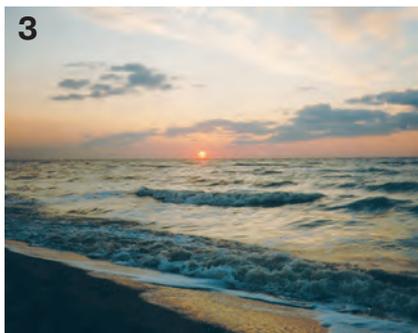


The average life term is 68 years:
73 for females
63 for males.

Ethnical composition of the population



- Work in pairs. Act out the situation: you are watching your family photo album. Make up the dialogue "My Family Tree": tell your friend about the members of your family.
- Look at the photos and tell your classmates about landscape of Ukraine.
 - Make some photos of nature (or find in the Internet resources, magazines, etc.), describe them and tell your classmates about nature and weather of Ukraine.



- 5. Project Work.** Work in groups of five to make your **rating**¹ of 10 famous Ukrainians. Tell your classmates about them and explain your choice. You can choose famous sportsmen, writers, politicians, actors, singers, etc.
- 6. An essay competition.** Write an essay “Why I love my country”.

IV. Reading

- Before you start reading, talk to your friend about what you know about Bohdan Khmelnytsky.
- Read the text and look up new words in a dictionary. Say what the text deals with.

Bohdan Khmelnytsky

In fact the history of the Ukrainian state is the history of national movement for freedom and independence. Any movement has its heroes. Bohdan Khmelnytsky is one of them.

¹ рейтинг

He was born in 1595 and he is well-known as a public figure, a general and the Ukrainian Hetman (Chief-tain) from 1648.

Bohdan Khmelnytsky was a well-educated, brilliant man. He knew such languages as Ukrainian, Russian, Polish, Latin, Turkish and Tatar. He had great knowledge on history, geography, law and other sciences. From youth he was good as a soldier. In 1620 both he and his father took part in a campaign of the Polish army against the Turks in Moldova. The same year he was taken prisoner by the Turks. The captivity lasted two long years. Later he served in the army and participated in the rebellions of 1637-1638. In 1637 he occupied the post of the army clerk, in 1638-1646 -the position of the Chygyrynsky sotnik. Because of the persecution from the side of the Polish authorities, at the end of 1647 he ran away to Zaporizhian Sich, where he was at the head of revolt in 1648. This insurrection was the beginning of the war for liberty and independence of Ukraine against Poland (1648-1654). He led the army in a great number of successful battles.



On June 8, 1648 Khmelnytsky sent a letter to the Russian tsar Aleksey Myhailovych with the request to take Ukraine into Russian authority and to render assistance in the war. As a result of tremendous effort the union of the Russian and Ukrainian lands became a reality. The agreement was signed in 1654 on the Pereiaslavka Rada.

Bohdan Khmelnytsky remained a chief of the Hetman Administration till his death in 1657. Folk, historical songs and legends are devoted to him. This hero of the war for liberty in 1648-1654 is shown in the works of Shevchenko, Hrebinka, Franko. The image of Bohdan Khmelnytsky is widely reflected both in literature, music, movie and theatrical art.

3. Complete the sentences: choose the correct item A, B or C.

- 1) Bohdan Khmelnytsky is well-known as ____ .
A. a public figure, a general and the Ukrainian Hetman

- B. a famous Ukrainian poet
C. a famous Ukrainian composer
- 2) He was born in ____ .
A. 1648
B. 1595
C. 1620
- 3) Khmelnytsky was a well-educated man and knew such languages as ____ .
A. Ukrainian, English and French
B. Ukrainian, Russian, Polish, Latin, Turkish and Tatar
C. Russian, Polish, English, Turkish and Tatar
- 4) From youth he was good as ____ .
A. a Chieftain
B. a historian
C. a soldier
- 5) In 1620 both he and his father took part in a campaign ____ .
A. of the Polish army against the Turks in Moldova.
B. for freedom and independence of Ukraine.
C. for freedom and independence of Russia.
- 6) He was taken prisoner by the Turks ____ .
A. in 1637.
B. in 1638.
C. in 1620.
- 7) At the end of 1647 he ran away to Zaporizhian Sich where he was at the head of revolt in 1648 because ____ .
A. of the persecution from the side of the Polish authorities
B. he served in the army and participated in the rebellions of 1637-1638
C. he occupied the post of the army clerk
- 8) This insurrection was the beginning of the war for liberty and independence ____ .
A. of Russia against Poland
B. of Ukraine against Poland (1648-1654)
C. of Ukraine against Russia
- 9) On June 8, 1648 Khmelnytsky sent a letter to the Russian tsar with the request ____ .
A. to begin war against Poland
B. to reflect his image in literature, music, movie and theatrical art
C. to take Ukraine into Russian authority and to render assistance in the war

- 10) Bohdan Khmelnytsky remained a chief of the Hetman Administration till ____ .
- A. his death in 1657
 - B. 1654
 - C. 1648

4. Say if the following sentences are true (T) or false (F).

- 1) Bohdan Khmelnytsky is one of the heroes of the history of the Ukrainian state.
- 2) He is well-known as a public figure, a general and the Ukrainian Hetman (Chieftain) from 1595.
- 3) Bohdan Khmelnytsky was a well-educated man and knew many languages.
- 4) He was taken prisoner by the Turks in 1620.
- 5) He ran away to Zaporizhian Sich because of the persecution from the side of the Polish authorities.
- 6) He was at the head of revolt in 1648.
- 7) Bohdan Khmelnytsky took part in the war for liberty and independence of Ukraine against Poland.
- 8) The Russian tsar Aleksey Myhailovych received a letter from Khmelnytsky with the request to take Ukraine into Russian authority and to render assistance in the war in 1648.
- 9) The union of the Russian and Ukrainian lands didn't become a reality.
- 10) This hero of the war for liberty in 1648-1654 is shown in the works of the famous Ukrainian poets and writers.

5. Make up the plan to the text.

6. Retell the text using the sentences given below.

I have read the text under the title It is about ... (It deals with ...) I have learnt that ... It was interesting to learn ...

7. Discuss the text in class. Talk about heroes of Ukrainian history.

V. Writing

- 1. a) Work in pairs: dictate and write down the words that you've learnt during your previous lessons. Make up sentences with them. If you don't know how to write the word, ask your friend to spell it.**

b) Write an essay about Ukraine. You can write about location, structure, landscape, population, historical events or traditions of our country.

2. a) Make up sentences using the table. Write down five of them.

I	had been	looking for a book	for 5 years	when she came. before he left. by that time. by 12 o'clock.
We		studying there	for 2 minutes	
You		living there	for 10 minutes	
They		working at school	for half an hour	
He		waiting for us	for two hours	
She		sleeping	since last year	
It	eating	since 1995		

b) Make interrogative sentences .

c) Make negative sentences.

3. Turn the sentences given below into the Past Perfect Continuous Tense as in the example.

Example:

I **have been reading** an article for half an hour. →

*I said that I **had been reading** an article for half an hour. /*

*I **had been reading** an article for half an hour *when Oleh came.**

1. I have been thinking about exams all day. 2. She has been doing her homework for an hour. 3. Tom has been in Ukraine for two weeks. 4. The teacher has been correcting our exercise-books. 5. My grandparents have been living abroad for a long time. 6. I have been skiing for an hour and a half. 7. Oleh Petrovych has been working at the factory for seven years. 8. You have been learning English since 2005. 9. The children have been looking for this dog since 9 o'clock. 10. We have been waiting for this letter for a week.

4. Ask your friend 5 questions in the Present Perfect Continuous Tense. Write his/her answers using indirect speech.

For example:

– How long **have you been learning** English?

– I have been learning English for six years.

*Anton said that he **had been learning** English for six years.*

5. Read the dialogue “A telephone conversation” and say which tenses the sentences are used in. Write and act out your own dialogue.

- Hullo!
- Hello! Could I speak to Oleh?
- It’s me. Who is speaking?
- Hi, Oleh! It’s Andrew Bondarenko. What are you doing now?
- Hi! I am watching TV.
- And what’s on?
- A football match “Dynamo” against “Vorskla”.
- And how long has the match been lasting?
- I’m not sure. Wait a moment... My father said it had been lasting for half an hour.
- I see. Let’s play football after the match in a yard.
- OK. It’s a good idea. See you later then.
- Well. So long.

6. Preparing for a report. Read the information and use the pieces of advise to prepare a report about Ukraine.

Before reporting about the topic you may do some steps which help you to do your work well.

Step 1. Make schemes.

In the centre of a sheet of paper, write the subject. Draw a circle around it. Then draw 8-10 straight lines from the circle. Ask yourself what you know about this subject and what you want to learn more about. Write each answer to the second question at the end of a line. After this you can make an outline of your speech.



You can also make bar or circle schemes. (Consult ex. 2, p. 207-208.)

Step 2. Make a plan (outline) of your report.

Write each main point you wish to explain.

For example:

1. State symbols of Ukraine:
 - a) the flag;
 - b) ...

Step 3. Make tables.

If you want to tell your friends about some events, make a **chronology**¹. (Consult ex. 3, p. 153).

Step 4. Note down some quotations.

You can use in your speech quotations: sentences or phrases from a book, speech etc. which you repeat in a speech or piece of writing because it is interesting.

6. Preparing for a report. Read the information and use the pieces of advise to prepare a report about Ukraine.

7. Internet skills. Looking for photos and pictures.

If you want to find some photos or pictures (photos of famous people, landscapes, flags etc.), you can use the Internet resources.

Click on the key "Photos" in the left upper corner in Google. There you can print a key word in space "Search".

For example: **Franklin, Bohdan Chmelnytsky, Rybak**, etc.

V. Time for Fun

1. Play a game "Decoder". Look at the decoder and guess which words are encoded. Who is faster?

For example: 4938 – the capital of Ukraine. (Kyiv)

- 1) 3677328749 – the first president of Ukraine.
- 2) 4326755 – the main city of one of the regions of Ukraine.

1 abc	2 def	3 ghi
4 jkl	5 mno	6 pqr
7 stu	8 vwx	9 yz

¹ хронологічна таблиця

- 3) 7837919 – the deepest lake of Ukraine.
- 4) 253665 – the longest river of Ukraine.
- 5) 16352157 – the mountains of Ukraine.
- 6) 85495 – one of the regions of Ukraine.
- 7) 7632257 – the main element of the Major State Coat of Arms of Ukraine.
- 8) 14114 – the sea of Ukraine.
- 9) 1152761 – Ukrainian folk musical instrument.
- 10) 3753169 – one of the countries which Ukraine borders on.

Homework

1. Use a **contour map**¹ of Ukraine. Mark the borders of its regions and point to the main towns/cities of them. Write the names of the countries which Ukraine borders on and the seas it is washed by.
2. Write 10 questions for your classmates about the geographical position and landscape of Ukraine. Use all types of interrogative sentences.
3. Write 10 sentences in the Past Perfect Continuous Tense.
4. Write what places of Ukraine you have (and have not) been to.
5. Make up a photo-poster “Ukraine, My Motherland” (draw or cut out the pictures from old newspapers and magazines or find them in the Internet). Write a few sentences about the places represented in the photos.
6. Prepare your project work (Ex. 5, p. 209).
7. Write a letter to your pen friend from Great Britain and tell him/her about your trip to your grandparents’ place.
8. **Project Work.** Write an essay for your wall-newspaper “Well-known people of Ukraine”.
You can write about a Ukrainian actor or actress, a singer, a politician, a scientist, a writer or a poet or any person who played or plays an important role in the history of Ukraine.

¹ контурна карта

9. Write an essay for an essay competition "Why I love my country" (for a project work — ex. 6, page 209).
10. Prepare a report about your native place.

Home Reading

1. Read the text and look up new words in a dictionary.

Ukrainians Abroad

It is a fact that not so long ago Ukraine had very weak connections with other countries. But nowadays Ukraine is an independent state and it has wide relations with Canada, the USA, the UK and other countries in policy, economics, culture, education and science.

It's very important to mention that many people who are Ukrainians by origin live in Canada. Many of the Ukrainians living now in Canada and other English-speaking countries don't lose connections with Ukraine.

But what we know about them? Who was the first Ukrainian in America? Learn some facts.

Historians don't know exactly who was the first Ukrainian arrived on the North American continent. Some documents show that it was Ivan Bohdan, from the west Ukrainian town of Kolomyia. On the 1st of October, in 1608, he with five Poles and under the leadership of Captain John Smith arrived in Virginia. Smith was an Englishman. He had been captured by Turks. When he escaped across Ukraine around 1603 he met Bohdan in that country. So later Smith and his followers, including Ivan Bohdan, founded Jamestown, one of the first European colonies in America.

Ukrainians coming from Eastern Europe have over a century of settlement in Canada. Over this period there have been four major waves of emigration to this country.

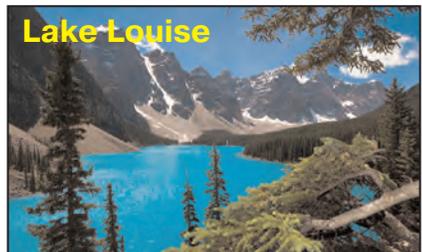
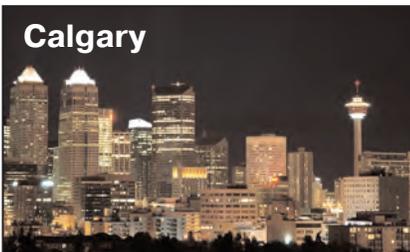
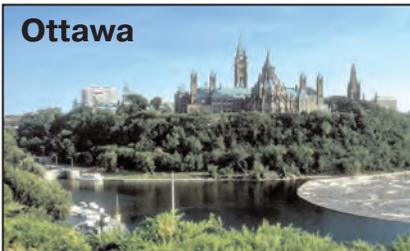
The first wave came between 1891 and 1914 from the provinces of Galicia and Bukovyna under the Austro-Hungarian Empire. These were mostly peasant farmers who were attracted by the "free lands of the prairies".

The second wave came after World War I, between 1920 and 1929. This wave was better educated. Many of the Ukrainians followed their kinfolk to the rural areas, but some of them settled in cities. This wave established many of the Ukrainian cultural, social, educational and religious institutions in Canada.

The third wave arrived after World War II, between 1947 and 1952. These Ukrainians were mostly refugees. They were educated people of different professions. Most people of this wave settled in urban centres, especially in eastern Canada. The third wave joined the already existing institutions in Canada and added new ones.

The fourth wave was the smallest one. In the 1980's and 1990's Ukrainians, that were allowed to leave Ukrainian SSR and later Ukraine, came to Canada. Since 1991 (Ukraine's independence) new immigrants have been added. These Ukrainians also were well educated. They settled mostly in urban regions.

Nowadays there are more than one million people who are Ukrainians by origin in Canada. One in ten Canadians can trace his/her origins to the Ukrainian settlers.



2. Prepare some questions and tasks for your classmates about the text you have read:
 - a) complete the sentences choosing the correct item A, B, C or D;
 - b) say if the sentences are true or false.
3. Retell the text using the sentences:

I have read the text under the title ... It is about ... (It deals with ...)
It is (isn't) interesting. I (don't) like it because ... It was interesting to learn ... I didn't know that ...
4. Tell your classmates what you know about Ukrainians abroad.

Check Yourself!

Choose the correct item a, b, c or d*.

Complete the sentences:

1. There are ___ regions and the Crimean autonomous republic in Ukraine.

- a) 22
- b) 23
- c) 24
- d) 25

2. Ukraine borders ___ five countries on land.

- a) in
- b) with
- c) to
- d) on

3. Through the sea Ukraine's neighbour-country is ___ in the south.

- a) Georgia
- b) Russia
- c) Bulgaria
- d) Turkey

4. The Dnipro is ___ in length in Europe.

- a) the first
- b) the second
- c) the third
- d) the fourth

5. Find the wrong item:

- a) A national anthem is an official song of a nation that is sung or played on certain formal occasions.
- b) A state flag is a piece of cloth with a coloured pattern or picture on it that represents a country.
- c) A state symbol is a set of pictures or patterns painted on a shield and used as the special sign of a country.
- d) A state coat of arms is a picture or shape that is used to represent a country.

6. Find the question to the answer:

I had been walking to St. Sophia's Cathedral for half an hour.

- a) Are you walking to St. Sophia's Cathedral?
- b) How long have you been walking to St. Sophia's Cathedral?
- c) How long had you been walking to St. Sophia's Cathedral when I rang you up?
- d) Where were you going when I rang you up?

7. Find the answer to the question.

How long had he been studying at school by that time?

- a) He had been studying at school for 2001 by that time.
- b) He has been studying at school for two years by that time.
- c) He had been studying at school for two years by that time.
- d) He studied at school last year.

8. Find the correct sentence.

- a) These pupils are reading the English text at the moment.
- b) This pupil has been reading the English text now.
- c) These pupils had been reading the English text now.
- d) This pupils is reading the English text now.

9. Find Present Participle (Participle I) of the verb *to border*.

- a) borders
- b) to border
- c) bordered
- d) bordering

10. Find the sentence in the Past Perfect Continuous Tense.

- a) I have been writing an essay about the Crimean Mountains for two hours.
- b) He said he had been travelling around Ukraine since Sunday.
- c) We had bought a map of Lutsk for him till 5 o'clock.
- d) I have some interesting material for my report about the Danube River.

11. Choose the correct variant to translate the sentence.

Вони пояснили, що живуть у Києві з минулого року.

- a) They explained that they live in Kyiv since last year.
- b) They explained that they have been living in Kyiv since last year.
- c) They explained that they had been living in Kyiv since last year.
- d) They explained that they lived in Kyiv since last year.

12. Choose the proper sentence.

Your friend goes to London. You wish him:

- a) Have a good trip!
- b) Have a good day!
- c) Welcome to London!
- d) Help yourself!

* The keys to the exercises: 1-c, 2-d, 3-d, 4-c, 5-c, 6-c, 7-c, 8-a, 9-d, 10-b, 11-c, 12-a.

UNIT 7 *** EDUCATION

I. Language Material

1. a) Listen and repeat the words in the right column.
Pay attention to the correct pronunciation.
b) Read the sentences in the left column. Pay attention to the proper intonation.
c) Say what you know about education in Great Britain.
d) Answer the questions in the left column and tell your friends about education in Ukraine.

Education is important in any country. Education is an important part of British life, too. There are hundreds of schools, colleges and universities, including some of the most famous in the world. English children **are required** by **law** to have an education until they are 16 years old. Education is **compulsory**, but school is not, children are not required **to attend** school. They could **be educated** at home.

Education is **free** for all children from 5 to 18. About 94 per cent of pupils in the UK **receive** free education from **public funds**, while 6 per cent attend independent **fee-paying** schools.

*Is education compulsory in Ukraine?
Must all children attend school in Ukraine? Is education free or fee-paying in Ukraine?*

Children's education in the UK is divided into two **separate stages**. English children begin with **primary** education at the age of 5 and this usually **lasts** until they are 11. Then they move to a **secondary** school, there they stay until they **reach** 16 or 18 years. Teachers in primary schools are always **addressed** by their surname by parents

education [ˌedʒʊˈkeɪʃən]

освіта

to require [rɪˈkwaɪə] вимагати

a law [lɔː] закон

compulsory [kəmˈpʌlsəri] обов'язковий

to attend [əˈtend] відвідувати

to educate [ˈedʒu(:)keɪt]

давати освіту

free [friː] безкоштовний

to receive [rɪˈsiːv] отримувати

public funds [ˈfʌndz] державні кошти

fee-paying [ˈfiːpeɪɪŋ] платний

separate [ˈseprɪt] окремий

a stage [steɪdʒ] етап

primary [ˈpraɪməri] початковий (*про школу, освіту*)

to last [lɑːst] тривати

secondary [ˈsekəndəri] середній (*про школу, освіту*)

to reach [riːtʃ] досягати

and pupils – like Mr Brown, Mrs Red or Miss Smith, etc. At secondary schools, teachers are always addressed as Miss or Sir.

In general, children start school on the first day of the term after they **turn 5**. At the age of 11, they **move on to regular high schools**, known as secondary schools.

English children are required to attend school until they are 16 years old.

How many stages of education are there in Ukraine? When do Ukrainian boys and girls begin to study at school? When do they leave school?

How do you call your teachers?

At the age of 16, students **pass an examination** called the GCSE (**General Certificate of Secondary Education**). All students are tested in Mathematics, English Literature, English, Chemistry, Biology, Physics, History or the **Classics**, one modern language and one other subject, such as Art or Computer Studies. After completing the GCSE, some students **leave school**, others go onto a **technical college**, whilst others continue at **high school** for two more years and **take standardized exams**, known as *A-levels*, in three or four subjects. These exams show **whether** a student is ready for university.

What subjects do you study at school? Do you pass any exams? What can Ukrainian pupils do after 9th form?

There are such marks in the UK as: A* – **excellent**, super! (pupils get this

to address [ə'dres] звертатись

to turn ['tə:n] досягати

to move on ['mu:vɒn] переходити

regular high school [ˈregjʊlə ˈhaɪ] – середня школа

to pass [pɑ:s] складати **an examination** [ɪg,zæmɪ-
ˈnæʃən] складати іспит

the General Certificate

[sə'tɪfɪkət] **of Secondary**

Education – атестат про загальну середню освіту

Classics [ˈklæsɪks] антична культура, класичні мови (латинь, грецька)

to leave school – закінчувати школу

technical college [ˈteknɪk(ə)l
ˈkɒlɪdʒ] технічний вуз

whilst [waɪlst] поки

high school – середня школа

to take an exam – скла-
дати іспит

standardized [ˈstændədaɪzd]

exams – випускні іспити

whether [ˈweðə] чи

excellent [ˈeks(ə)lənt] від-
мінно, чудово

mark very seldom); A – excellent; B – very well; C – well; D – not very well; E – bad; F – very bad/**failed**; N – **unsatisfactory**; U – **unclassified**.

But it's necessary to say that to get mark E and **lower** in the UK means very-very bad.

What marks do pupils get at your school? What marks do you usually get?

The school year in the UK is 39 weeks **long** and is divided into six **terms**:

- from September to October;
- from February to March;
- from October to December;
- from April to May;
- from January to February;
- from June to July.

The main school holidays in the United Kingdom are:

- Christmas – 2 weeks;
- Spring – 2 weeks;
- Summer – 6 weeks.

There are also one week holidays: at the end of October, in the **mid** February and at the end of May.

How many terms are there at the Ukrainian schools? What holidays do you have during a school year?

failed ['feɪld] невдало

unsatisfactory

['ʌn,sætɪs'fækt(ə)rɪ]

незадовільно

unclassified [ʌn'klæsɪfaɪd]

неатестовано

lower ['ləʊə] нище

long ['lɒŋ] тривалістю у ...

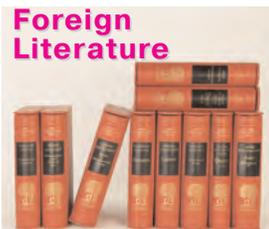
a term [tɜ:m] 1) термін,

2) семестр, чверть (*у школі*)

mid [mɪd] середина

2. Listening.

a) Look at the pictures and listen to Taras talking about his favourite subject. Say what subject he is talking about.



b) Listen to the Taras's story again. Say which words he uses in his speech. Write them down into your exercise-book.

- | | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> a lesson | <input type="checkbox"/> a vocabulary | <input type="checkbox"/> an exam |
| <input type="checkbox"/> to educate | <input type="checkbox"/> a text-book | <input type="checkbox"/> a mark |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a subject | <input type="checkbox"/> foreign | <input type="checkbox"/> a term |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a secondary school | <input type="checkbox"/> German | <input type="checkbox"/> a form |

c) Tell your classmates about Taras's English lessons. Say what your favourite subject is.

3. a) Read the text and say what it deals with.

Our school is not very large. It's a modern three-storeyed building. In front of the school there is a big sports-ground, behind it there is a small garden with beautiful flower-beds. Here on the sports-ground pupils have their classes in Physical Training when the weather is fine.

When you enter the school you will see a large gymnasium and workshops on the left. On the right there is a dining room. The cloak room is downstairs.

The classroom, the laboratories, the nurse's room, the Teachers' room are on the upper floors. On the walls of the corridors you can see portraits of famous scientists, writers and outstanding people of our country. There are light curtains on the windows and many flowers on the window-sills. The halls are full of sunlight.

Entering a classroom you'll find three rows of desks, a teacher's table, a blackboard and a bookcase. You'll also see different pictures, diagrams and wall-newspapers.

At school we have classrooms for foreign languages. Our English classroom is on the second floor.

I like my school very much.

b) Speaking skills. Talk to your classmates about your school.

c) Say what you do to do your school better. What do you want to change at your school?

4. Complete the table and say what subjects you learn. When and how many times a week do you have them?

The field of Education	Subjects	Activities
Languages and Literatures	Ukrainian	<i>Learn grammar rules, write dictations, essays, do exercises.</i>
	Ukrainian Literature	...
	Foreign Languages	
	Foreign Literature	
Social Sciences	History of Ukraine	
	World History	
	Science of Law	
	Economics	
	Human Being and the World	
Aesthetic Education	Art Education	
	Aesthetics	
Mathematics	Algebra	
	Geometry	
Natural Sciences	Astronomy	
	Biology	
	Geography	
	Physics	
	Chemistry	
	Ecology	
Technologies	Computer Studies	
	Handicrafts	
Health and Physical Education	Physical Training	
	Military Training	

5. Work in pairs. Talk to your friend about your timetable as in the example.

For example:

P₁: What day is it today?

P₂: It's Monday today?

P₁: What lessons do we have today?

P₂: We have 7 lessons today. They are Geometry, English, Foreign Literature, Ukrainian Literature, History, Biology and Computer Studies.

- 6.** Describe the photos given below. Say what school subjects they are. Use the words and sentences:

I see... in the picture.

He/she is ...-ing.

This is... .

They are ...-ing.

There is/are... .

Pupils, schoolchildren, boys/girls, a classroom, a gymnasium, a laboratory, the lesson of ..., in the ... form.



- 7.** Write an essay "Education in our life". Use one of the following sayings or quotations in it.

<i>Train hard fight easy.</i> A proverb	<i>Важко у навчанні, легко у бою.</i> Прислів'я
<i>As for me, all I know is that I know nothing.</i> Socrates	<i>Щодо мене, то я знаю тільки те, що я нічого не знаю.</i> Сократ
<i>Learning is the eye of the mind.</i> A proverb	<i>Ученому – світ, а невченому – тьма.</i> Прислів'я
<i>Live and learn.</i> A proverb	<i>Вік живи – вік навчайся.</i> Прислів'я

II. Grammar Section

The Conjunction

1. Read the sentences with the following conjunctions and give your examples.

as ... as ... – *так ... , як ... (такий ... , як ...)*

My cat is **as** fat **as** a ball. Your dog is **as** big **as** my cat.
He is **as** old **as** me. My sister is not **as** old **as** him.
Oleh is **as** clever **as** our teacher. I am **not so** clever **as** Oleh.
Natalka is **as** tall **as** Olenka. Ann is **as** short **as** her brother.
I cannot run **as** fast **as** Maksym does.

Read the idiomatic expressions:

as good as gold – *добре вихований (хлопчик, дитина тощо)*

A child was **as good as gold**. Olenka is **as good as gold**.

be as good as one's word – *міцно тримати слово (обіцянку)*

You should be **as good as your word**. I'll be **as good as my word**.

as soon as possible – *якомога швидше*

We should finish the work **as soon as possible**.

I'll do it **as soon as possible**. I did it **as soon as possible**.

He will come back **as soon as possible**.

as well as – *так само, як і ...*

We read texts **as well as** write essays at the English lessons.

We have Algebra **as well as** Biology today.

Pupils have six lessons today, **as well as** on Monday.

as right as rain – *здоровий, як бик*

He is **as right as rain**.

as important, as snow of yesterday – *потрібно, як торішній сніг*

It is **as important, as snow of yesterday**.

both ... and ... – *і ... , і ...*

We **both** run **and** play football at the lessons of Physical Training.

I have got **both** brother **and** sister.

Both parents **and** their children like to travel.

The pupils of the 7th form can **both** speak **and** write English.

The essay about our school was written by **both** Oleh **and** Ann.

neither ... nor ... – ні ... , ні ...

Neither his mother **nor** his father works at school.
She has got **neither** brother **nor** sister.
We **neither** read **nor** write at the lessons of Handicrafts.
It is **neither** forbidden **nor** allowed.

either ... or ... – або ... , або ...

Either Olenka **or** Natalka **is** on duty today.
He has got **either** two **or** three sisters.
We **either** draw **or** paint pictures at the Art lessons.
His leg was **either** broken **or** dislocated.

so do I/so is he (= too) – і я/він також
(додається до ствержувального речення)

Olenka likes Maths *and* **so do I**.
If you're going to the park *then* **so will I**.
Mr Black prefers to read newspapers in the morning *and* **so does his wife**.
His mother would like to listen to music *and* **so would he**.
I enjoy playing football. — **So do I**.
Compare: Tom likes dogs. I like dogs, **too**.
I am glad to see you. — Me, **too**.

2. Complete the sentences using the proper conjunctions.

- 1) I am thirteen. So I am ... a child ... an adult: I am a teenager.
- 2) ... girls ... boys study in our class.
- 3) Oleh is ... old ... Olha. They are **twins** (близнюки).
- 4) Our cousin is ... tall ... short: she is of medium height.
- 5) ... Denys ... Ruslan made a big wooden hare at the lesson of Handicrafts. The hare was made by one of their friends.
- 6) My uncle and aunt have got two children. They have ... a daughter ... a son.
- 7) Mykola's niece has ... fair ... black hair, she has got a chestnut one.
- 8) I shall return the book to the library ... soon ... possible.
- 9) I don't remember exactly but I think we gave a concert for our parents ... at the end of the first term ... at the beginning of the second one.
- 10) We have got Geometry on Tuesday, ... well ... on Friday.

3. Work in pairs. Make up and act out the dialogue using conjunctions you have learnt.

4. a) Complete the sentences with words: **a torpid bear** (*ведмідь у сплячці*), **a leaf**, **a horse**, **a nightingale** (*соловей*), **a lion**, **a fish**.

- 1) My brother is very fast, he runs like ____ .
- 2) His uncle Taras is very strong and he swims like ____ .
- 3) Her niece is lazy and she sleeps all the day long like ____ .
- 4) Our cousin is very brave, he fights like ____ .
- 5) My sister sings very beautiful, she sings like ____ .
- 6) Their dog is cowardly and it often trembles like ____ .

b) Paraphrase the sentences using **as ... as ...** .

Example:

My brother is very agile, he can climb a tree like a monkey. – My brother is **as** agile **as** a monkey.

c) Paraphrase the sentences using **so do I** if it's true.

Example:

My brother is very fast *and so am I*. He runs like a hare *and so do I*.

5. Work in pairs. Look at the pictures and name the school things one by one. Ask your classmate what school things he/she has got and what there is in his/her knapsack. Use alternative questions and conjunctions **neither ... nor ... ; both ... and ...** . Use dictionaries if you have forgotten the words.

For example:

P₁: Have you got pens or pencils?

P₂: I have both pens and pencils.

P₁: Is there a globe or construction paper in your knapsack?

P₂: There is neither a globe nor construction paper in my knapsack.





6. Paraphrase the sentences using neither ... nor ...; both ... and; either ... or

- 1) Danylo has a lesson of Ukrainian Literature today. He has a lesson of Foreign Literature today, too.
- 2) We wrote a dictations at the English lesson yesterday. We also read a story yesterday.
- 3) One hospital is situated in Gogol Street in our town. Another hospital is situated in Pushkin Street.
- 4) I don't like to play tennis. My brother doesn't like to play tennis either.
- 5) We decided to prepare a concert or a play for our guests.
- 6) Olena goes to the music school and, as far as I remember, she plays the piano or the guitar.
- 7) I have no sister. I have no brother.
- 8) I cannot sing well. I cannot dance well either.
- 9) These pictures were painted in oil-paints. Those pictures were painted in watercolours.
- 10) Our English lab is equipped with a TV set. It is equipped with a tape-recorder, too.

7. Make up and write the sentences with the conjunctions neither ... nor ...; both ... and ... ; either ... or ... ; as ... as Imagine any situation where they can be used and make up a short story or riddles.

For example:

- 1) It has neither feet nor legs but it can walk.
- 2) It has neither lips nor tongue but it can tell you a tale.
- 3) It has both four legs and a back but it isn't an animal.



III. Oral Practice

1. Speaking skills. Read the text and talk to each other about your teachers. Use the word in bold.

Meet Oleh Petrovych Kovalenko. **He is** both the Headmaster of our school and **a teacher of** History. He is about fifty. **He has been working for** thirty years at our school. He teaches both History of Ukraine and the World History. **We have the lessons of** History **twice a week**. Oleh Petrovych **tells us about** different historical events, wars and outstanding people. He is a great talker and a good organizer. **His lessons are** very interesting. **He also teaches us how** to use different maps, work with contour map, make up chronologies. Oleh Petrovych is a very good teacher. He is strict but fair. Pupils like his lessons very much.



2. Work in pairs. Make up and act out the dialogue “A Telephone Conversation”: you were absent at school; call your friend and ask what is the homework.

For example:

- Hullo!
- Hello! Could I speak to Maksym?

- It's me. Who is speaking?
- Hi, Maksym! It's Andriy Petrenko.
- Hello, Andriy. You were absent today. How are you? Had something happened?
- No, everything is OK. I felt unwell in the morning
- It's a pity.
- Never mind. I'm fine now.
- Oh, it's good. Are you going to school tomorrow?
- Yes, I am. I'm calling you to ask about homework.
- Just a moment. I'll take my mark book.
- OK.
- Well. We'll have 7 lessons tomorrow.
- Listen! They are Algebra, English, Ukrainian Literature, Ukrainian, Geography, Chemistry and the Art education, aren't they?
- Yes, they are. You are right.
- I need homework for English and Ukrainian Literature only. I know the others.
- OK. Write down: for English: exercises 2, 3, 4, page 100 and to read and retell the text about the UK; for Ukrainian Literature: to write an essay about your favourite modern poet and learn by heart two of his or her poems. Have you written it down?
- Oh, yes. Thank you very much.
- Not at all.
- Well. Good bye. See you tomorrow.
- So long! See you soon!

3. Work in groups. Make up and act out the situation: you have an English lesson. One pupil of the group is a teacher.

4. Speaking skills. Read the information about education in the USA and act out the situation: four-five pupils of your class are the schoolchildren from the USA. Talk to them about your school life.

The American system of school education differs from the system of education in other countries. There are state public schools, private elementary schools and private secondary schools. Public schools are free and private schools are fee-paying. Each state has its own system of public schools.

Elementary education begins at the age of six or seven. There pupils have English, Arithmetic, Geography, the History of the USA, Natural Sciences, Physical Training, Singing, Drawing, wood or metal work. Sometimes they learn a foreign language and world history. At the end of every school year children have a test. If a child does well, he/she goes to the next form (“grade”). If he/she doesn't do well, he/she must repeat the grade.



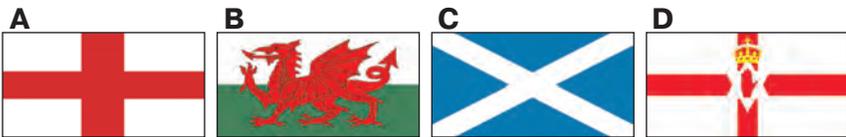
At the age of sixteen schoolchildren leave the elementary school and may continue their education at one of the secondary schools. These schools are also called high schools.

Besides the subjects of general education young Americans at some high schools have the subjects which are useful for their future profession in industry or agriculture.

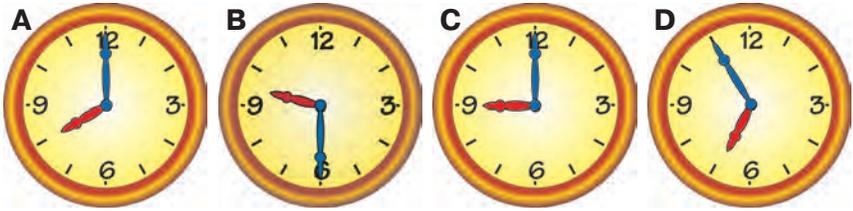
5. Listening.

Listen to the text and answer the questions.

- Choose the correct item a, b, c or d.
- Say if the sentences are true (T) or false (F).
- Where does Tom live?

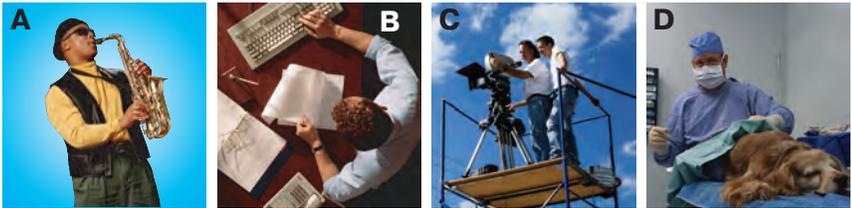


- He is an English teenager, isn't he?
- What school does the boy go to?
 - a) a nursery school c) an elementary school
 - b) a junior school d) a secondary school
- He learns such foreign languages as English and French, doesn't he?
- What time does the first lesson usually start at Tom's school?



The boy has five lessons a day, hasn't he?

What does Tom want to be in the future?



That's why he studies biology hard, doesn't he?

6. Project Work. Work in groups to prepare a report about education in English-speaking countries. (You can also tell your friends about school in any European country or in Ukraine.)

Group A. Education of the United Kingdom.

Group B. Education of the USA.

Group C. Education of Canada.

Group D. Education of Australia.

Group E. Education of New Zealand.

IV. Reading

1. Before you start reading, talk to your friends about what kinds of literature you read at your lessons of Ukrainian and Foreign Literatures. What kind of books do you like?
2. Read the text and look up new words in a dictionary. Say what the text deals with. What kind of writing does the text belong to?

Strange Messages

One night in 1828, the captain of a ship crossing the Atlantic Ocean was in his cabin when suddenly a man stepped into the room. The captain had never seen the man before. The man said nothing,

but he wrote a message on the wall of the cabin and then disappeared. The message said, "Turn the ship and sail to the northwest". The captain was surprised but decided to follow the stranger's instructions. A few hours later, he saw a small ship ahead that was sinking. The captain asked his crew to see what had happened. They only found one person on board the ship. It was the same man the captain had seen in his cabin. The man explained he had just awakened from a deep sleep. In his sleep, he dreamed that he was going to be rescued.

In 1956, a young Swedish sailor on a ship at sea became bored. He wrote a message and put it in a bottle. The message gave his name and address and asked any pretty girl who found it to write to him. Two years later, an Italian fisherman found the bottle and showed the message to his daughter. Just for a joke, she wrote to the sailor. He replied and soon they started writing to each other regularly. Then they decided to meet. Shortly after their first meeting, the sailor and the fisherman's daughter got married.

Abraham Lincoln, the sixteenth president of the United States, may have received a message about his own death in a dream. One night in 1865, he had a strange dream. He dreamed he was inside the White House. A group of people was standing around a coffin in the East Room of the White House. Many of them were crying. "Who is dead?" he asked. "The president," someone answered. "He was killed by an assassin". A few days after this, on April 14th, Lincoln was shot and killed while he was watching a play at Ford's Theatre in Washington, D.C.

3. Complete the sentences: choose the correct item A, B or C.

- 1) One night in 1828, the captain of a ship crossing the Atlantic Ocean was in his cabin when suddenly ____ stepped into the room.
A. a man B. sailors C. a cook
- 2) The man said nothing but he wrote a message ____ .
A. on the wall of the cabin
B. on a piece of paper
C. on the door of the cabin
- 3) The captain was surprised but decided ____ .
A. to call all his sailors

- B. to follow the stranger's instructions
 - C. to take that man away
- 4) A few hours later, he saw ____ .
- A. that strange man on a small ship
 - B. a small ship ahead that was sinking
 - C. his crew sinking
- 5) A young Swedish sailor on a ship at sea ____ .
- A. became bored
 - B. fell in love
 - C. bought a bottle
- 6) Two years later, an Italian fisherman found the bottle and ____ .
- A. sold it at the market
 - B. showed the message to his daughter
 - C. threw it back into the sea
- 7) Abraham Lincoln dreamed he was inside the White House and a group of people ____ in the East Room of the White House.
- A. was having an argument
 - B. was standing around a coffin
 - C. was discussing the future elections
- 8) Lincoln was shot and killed ____ at Ford's Theatre in Washington, D.C.
- A. while he was making a speech
 - B. while he was watching a play
 - C. while he was meeting his friend

4. Say if the following sentences are true (T) or false (F).

- 1) The captain had never seen the man before.
- 2) The captain wrote a message on the wall of the cabin.
- 3) The message said, "Turn the ship and sail to the northeast".
- 4) The captain was surprised and decided not to follow the stranger's instructions.
- 5) In his sleep, the captain dreamed that he was going to be rescued.
- 6) A young Swedish sailor wrote a message and put it in a bottle.
- 7) The message gave his name and address and asked any pretty girl who found it to phone him.
- 8) The sailor and the fisherman's daughter got married.

- 9) Abraham Lincoln may have received a message about his own death in a dream.
- 10) Lincoln was shot and killed while he was watching a play.

5. Make up the plan of the text.

6. Retell the text using the sentences given below.

I have read the text under the title It is about ... (It deals with ...) I have learnt that ... It was interesting to learn ... The stories are interesting/dull.

7. **Project Work.** Think and write your opinion.

- Do you believe in fate?
- Can a person change his fate?
- Which of the stories is the strangest?
- Has anything strange ever happened to you? Write about your strange experience.

V. Writing

1. a) Work in pairs: dictate and write down the words that you've learnt during your previous lessons. Make up sentences with them. If you don't know how to write the word, ask your friend to spell it.

b) Write an essay about your favourite subject.

2. a) Make up 5 sentences with conjunctions **both ... and**.

b) Make interrogative sentences : ask alternative questions to them.

c) Make negative sentences.

3. Make up 5 sentences with conjunctions **as ... as**.

Paraphrase them using **so do I/so am I/so is he/so is she**.

For example:

*Olenka is **as tall as** her brother. →*

*Olenka is rather tall and **so is her brother**.*

4. Work in groups. Write an essay “My school” and dictate it to your friends.
5. Revise the rules of degrees of comparison of adverbs. Answer the questions as in the example.

Degrees of comparison		
One syllable (один склад)		
late (пізно) fast (швидко)	later (пізніше) faster (швидше)	latest (найпізніше) fastest (найшвидше)
Two or more syllables (два або більше складів)		
quietly (тихо) carefully (обережно)	more quietly (тихіше) more carefully (обережніше)	most quietly (найтихіше) most carefully (найобережніше)
<u>But!</u> early	earlier	earliest

REMEMBER!!!

well (добре) – **better** (краще) – **best** (найкраще)
badly (погано) – **worse** (гірше) – **worst** (найгірше)

For example:

*Does Tom drive a car as carefully as your father? →
No, he doesn't. My father drives a car more carefully.*

- Does a trolleybus run as fast as a train?
- Did Olena recite verses as expressively as her sister?
- Is Maksym reading the text as fluently as his classmate?
- Did you come home after classes as late as your mother?
- Do your classmates speak English as slowly as the pupils from the 5th form?
- Does Olha's grandmother speak Ukrainian as well as her teacher?
- Do you get up as early as your parents?
- Does Andriy do his homework as badly as he did last week?
- Do your classmates study as hard as they did last year?
- Are you writing down the sentences as carefully as your friend?

6. **Language Card.** A language card shows your speaking, reading and writing skills. Have you been keeping it for last years? Continue your language card or make up new one as in the example.

LANGUAGE CARD	
	1. Name: <u>Volodymyr Karpenko</u>
	2. School: <u>№ 12, Lutsk</u>
	3. Form: <u>10A</u>
	4. Age: <u>sixteen</u>
	5. My mother tongue: <u>Ukrainian</u>
	6. I speak to my friends: <u>Ukrainian</u>
	7. I speak to my parents: <u>Ukrainian</u>
	8. I speak well: <u>Ukrainian, Russian, English</u>
	9. I study at school: <u>Ukrainian, English, German</u>
I can now:	
1. English speaking skills:	<u>1) I can tell people about myself, my family ,</u>
	<u>2) I can describe pictures.</u>
	<u>3) I can retell the text and say what it deals with.</u>
	<u>4) ...</u>
2. English reading skills:	<u>1) I can read words and sentences.</u>
	<u>2) I can read texts.</u>
	<u>3) ...</u>
3. English writing skills:	<u>1) I can write words and their transcription.</u>
	<u>2) I can write a letter.</u>
	<u>3) ...</u>

7. Internet skills.

If you want to find some information, interesting stories in English, English proverbs and quotations, etc., you can use the Internet resources. Here are some useful addresses:

www.en.wikipedia.org (the encyclopedia in English);
www.alexander.sensusdesign.ru (English proverbs);
www.thefreelibrary.com (books of English-speaking writers);
longlongtimeago.com (stories in English);
www.franklang.uk (stories and novels in English);
www.bbc.co.uk (news in English);

You can use also www.google.com. There you can print a key word in space "Search".

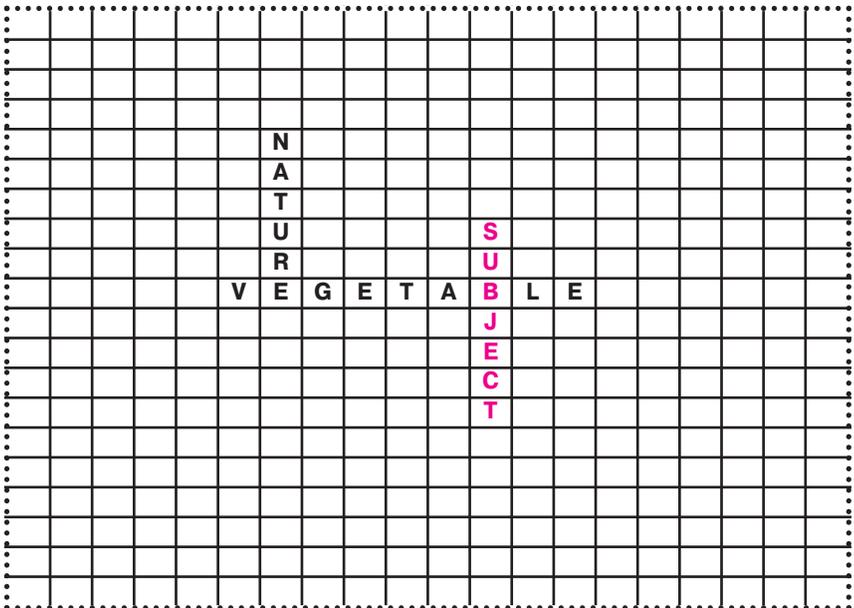
For example: **Lady D, education, climate of the UK**, etc.

V. Time for Fun

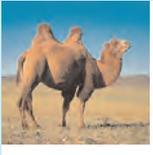
1. Play a game "Trick-Truck".

The rules:

- 1) Write words (nouns) one by one.
- 2) For each word – 1 point.
- 3) Add 2 points if you write the word concerning to the topic «School».



2. Look and guess the names of some useful plants. Try to make your own rebuses.


 ” + **O** + 1609 metres

c = g +  +  + the 3rd letter of the ABC

Ukrainian → English
або + 


³₂¹₄⁵

Homework

- Write 10 sentences about your favourite subject. State why you like it, what days of the week and how many times a week you have it on, what you do at these lessons, who your teacher is, etc.
- Write your daily routine for tomorrow.
- Write 10 sentences with conjunctions as ... as, both ... and, neither ... nor, either ... or.
- Write an essay about the profession of a teacher. Do you want to be a teacher? Why? Why not?
- Prepare your project work (Ex. 6, “Oral Practice”).
- Make an oral report “Educational System of Ukraine”.

Keys: 1. Camomile. 2. Garlic. 3. Orange. 4. Lemon.

7. Make a photo-poster "Our School". Write a few sentences about the places on the photos.
8. **Project Work.** Prepare and hold any English **out-of-class activity**¹ for the pupils of primary school.
9. Write a few sentences about the subjects you will learn next year.
10. Look at your language card and say what you could and couldn't do last year.

Home Reading

1. Next year you'll begin to study Astronomy. Some fact of this science you have learnt at the lessons of Natural Sciences. Read the text about Astronomy and look up new words in a dictionary.

Planets and the Solar System

Who are the planets named after?

All the planets except for one are named after gods and goddesses of Greek or Roman legends. The biggest planet, Jupiter, is named after the Roman king of the gods, for example. The exception is our planet, which we call the Earth. This is because the other planets were thought to be in heaven, like the gods and our planet lay beneath, like the earth.

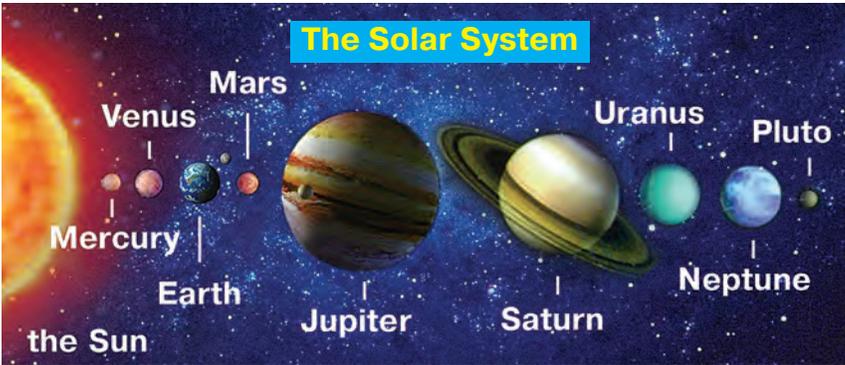
What is the difference between a planet and a moon?

A planet is a world that goes around the Sun. A moon is a smaller world that goes around a planet. All except two of the planets have moons. The Earth and Pluto have only one, whereas Jupiter has sixteen. Mercury and Venus have none.

What is the Solar System?

The Solar System is made up of the Sun and all the bodies that go around the Sun. These are the planets and their moons, the asteroids or minor planets, meteoroids and comets. Each moves in a particular path or orbit around the Sun. The Sun's force of gravity holds all these bodies together in the Solar System because it is bigger than they are.

¹ позакласний захід



How many planets are there?

The Sun has nine planets. They are Mercury which is closest to the Sun and then come Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune and finally Pluto. Pluto is the most distant planet, but it had been closer to the Sun, than Neptune until 1999. We cannot say how many planets there are in the Universe because other stars almost certainly have planets like the Sun does, although we cannot see them.

Which is the biggest planet?

The biggest planet is Jupiter. Its diameter is 88,600 miles, more than eleven times the diameter of the Earth. In volume, Jupiter is more than 1,300 times the size of the Earth! In fact, Jupiter is so massive that it weighs 21 times as much as all the other eight planets put together.

Which is the smallest planet?

Pluto is the smallest planet. Its diameter is about 1,800 miles. This is about three-fourths the size of our Moon. Recently scientists have considered it to be a pygmean planet.

What is the difference between a planet and a star?

A star is a huge ball of hot glowing gas, like the Sun. A planet is a world like the Earth. The Sun and stars produce their own light. The planets are lit by light from the Sun. In the night sky, you cannot tell the planets from the stars. They all look like tiny points of light, because they are far away. However, the planets are nearer than the stars. Through a powerful telescope, you can see that the planets

are other worlds. The stars are so very distant that they still look like points of light, even through the most powerful telescope.

Where does the Solar System end?

The most distant planet, Pluto, is often thought to be at the edge of the Solar System. Its orbit takes it an average distance of 3,700 million miles from the Sun. This is about a million times the width of the Atlantic Ocean between Europe and the United States. However, some comets are thought to travel halfway to the nearest star – a distance of about two light-years. This would make the Solar System about four light-years across, which is nearly 25 trillion miles.



2. Prepare some questions and tasks for your classmates about the text you have read:
 - a) choose the correct item A, B, C or D to complete the sentences;
 - b) say if the sentences are true or false.
3. Retell the text using the sentences:

I have read the text under the title ... It is about ... (It deals with ...)
It is (isn't) interesting. I (don't) like it because ... It was interesting to learn ... I didn't know that ...
4. Speak to your classmates about planets of the Solar System.

7. Find the answer to the question.

He is as right as rain today.

- a) Is Tom right?
- b) Is it raining today?
- c) How is Ben today?
- d) Is the boy on the right road?

8. Find the correct sentence.

- a) We didn't read neither texts nor poems at the last lesson.
- b) We read neither texts nor poems at the last lesson.
- c) We read either texts nor poems at the last lesson.
- d) We didn't read both texts and poems at the last lesson.

9. Find the wrong sentence.

- a) My brother likes History and so do I.
- b) My cousin likes Maths and so does his friend.
- c) My sister likes English and so am I.
- d) My friend likes Geography. I like this subject, too.

10. Find the comparative degree of the adverb *well*.

- a) weller
- b) more well
- c) better
- d) more better

11. Choose the correct variant to translate the sentence.

Мій молодший брат розмовляє англійською так добре, як я 2 роки тому.

- a) My elder brother speaks English as well as I did two years ago.
- b) My younger brother speaks English as well as I did two years ago.
- c) My younger brother speaks English as well as I two years ago.
- d) My elder brother speaks English well and so did I two years ago.

12. Choose the proper sentence.

You and your friend revise topics before the English exam. You have been learning them for 2 hours and your friend says that he can do it no more because he is tired. You said to him:

- a) Live and learn!
- b) My home is my castle.
- c) Train hard fight easy.
- d) Help yourself!

* The keys to the exercises: 1-d, 2-b, 3-a, 4-a, 5-c, 6-c, 7-c, 8-b, 9-c, 10-c, 11-b, 12-c.

SUPPLEMENT

I. Irregular Verbs

INFINITIVE	PAST INDEFINITE	PAST PARTICIPLE	MEANING
arise [ə'raɪz]	arose [ə'rəʊz]	arisen [ə'rizən]	сходити
awake [ə'weɪk]	awoke [ə'wəʊk]	awoken [ə'wəʊkən]	прокидатись
be [bi:]	was/were [wɒz we:]	been [bi:n]	бути
bear [beə]	bore [bɔ:]	born [bɔ:n]	народжувати(сь)
become [br'kʌm]	became [br'keɪm]	become [br'kʌm]	ставати
begin [br'gɪn]	began [br'gæn]	begun [br'gʌn]	починати
bend [bend]	bent [bent]	bent [bent]	згинати
bind [baɪnd]	bound [baʊnd]	bound [baʊnd]	зв'язувати
blow [bləʊ]	blew [blu:]	blown [bləʊn]	дути
break [breɪk]	broke [brəʊk]	broken [brəʊkn]	ламати
breed [bri:d]	bred [bred]	bred [bred]	розводити
bring [brɪŋ]	brought [brɔ:t]	brought [brɔ:t]	приносити
build [bɪld]	built [bɪlt]	built [bɪlt]	будувати
burn [bɜ:n]	burnt [bɜ:nt]	burnt [bɜ:nt]	палити, горіти
buy [baɪ]	bought [bɔ:t]	bought [bɔ:t]	купувати
catch [kæʃ]	caught [kɔ:t]	caught [kɔ:t]	ловити, хапати
choose [tʃu:z]	chose [tʃəʊz]	chosen [tʃəʊzən]	обирати
come [kʌm]	came [keɪm]	come [kʌm]	приходити
cost [kɒst]	cost [kɒst]	cost [kɒst]	коштувати
cut [kʌt]	cut [kʌt]	cut [kʌt]	різати
deal [di:l]	dealt [delt]	dealt [delt]	мати справу
dig [dɪg]	dug [dʌg]	dug [dʌg]	копати
do [du]	did [dɪd]	done [dʌn]	робити
draw [drɔ:]	drew [dru:]	drawn [drɔ:n]	малювати
dream [dri:m]	dreamt [dremt]	dreamt [dremt]	мріяти
	dreamed [dri:md]	dreamed [dri:md]	
drink [drɪŋk]	drank [dræŋk]	drunk [drʌŋk]	пити
drive [draɪv]	drove [drəʊv]	driven [drɪvn]	їхати, керувати
eat [i:t]	ate [et]	eaten [i:tn]	їсти
fall [fɔ:l]	fell [fel]	fallen [fɔ:ln]	падати
feed [fi:d]	fed [fed]	fed [fed]	годувати
feel [fi:l]	felt [felt]	felt [felt]	відчувати
fight [faɪt]	fought [fɔ:t]	fought [fɔ:t]	битися
find [faɪnd]	found [faʊnd]	found [faʊnd]	знаходити
fly [flaɪ]	flew [flu:]	flown [fləʊn]	літати

INFINITIVE	PAST INDEFINITE	PAST PARTICIPLE	MEANING
forget [fə'gət]	forgot [fə'gɒt]	forgotten [fə'gɒtɪn]	забувати
forgive [fə'gɪv]	forgave [fə'geɪv]	forgiven [fə'gɪvɪn]	вибачати
freeze [fri:z]	froze [frəʊz]	frozen [frəʊzən]	замерзати
get [get]	got [gɒt]	got [gɒt]	отримувати
give [gɪv]	gave [geɪv]	given [gɪvɪn]	давати
grow [grəʊ]	grew [gru:]	grown [grəʊn]	рости
go [gəʊ]	went [went]	gone [gɒn]	іти, ходити
have [hæv]	had [hæd]	had [hæd]	мати
hear [hɪə]	heard [hɜ:d]	heard [hɜ:d]	слухати
hide [haɪd]	hid [hɪd]	hidden [hɪdn]	ховати(ся)
hit [hɪt]	hit [hɪt]	hit [hɪt]	ударяти
hold [həʊld]	held [held]	held [held]	тримати
hurt [hɜ:t]	hurt [hɜ:t]	hurt [hɜ:t]	завдавати болю
keep [ki:p]	kept [kept]	kept [kept]	берегти, тримати
kneel [ni:l]	knelt [nelt]	knelt [nelt]	стояти навколішки
knit [nɪt]	knit [nɪt]	knit(ted) [nɪt(ɪd)]	в'язати, плести
know [nəʊ]	knew [nju:]	know [nəʊn]	знати
lay [leɪ]	laid [leɪd]	laid [leɪd]	класти
lead [li:d]	led [led]	led [led]	вести
leap [li:p]	leapt [lept]	leapt [lept]	плигати
	leaped [li:pt]	leaped [li:pt]	
learn [lɜ:n]	learnt [lɜ:nt]	learnt [lɜ:nt]	вчитися
leave [li:v]	left [left]	left [left]	залишати
let [let]	let [let]	let [let]	дозволяти
lie [laɪ]	lay [leɪ]	lain [leɪn]	лежати
light [laɪt]	lit [lɪt]	lit [lɪt]	освітлювати
lose [lu:z]	lost [lɒst]	lost [lɒst]	губити
make [meɪk]	made [meɪd]	made [meɪd]	робити, виготовляти
mean [mi:n]	meant [ment]	meant [ment]	мати на увазі
meet [mi:t]	met [met]	met [met]	зустрічати
mistake [mɪs'teɪk]	mistook [mɪs'tʊk]	mistaken [mɪs'teɪkən]	помилятись
read [ri:d]	read [red]	read [red]	читати
ride [raɪd]	rode [rəʊd]	ridden [rɪdn]	їхати верхи
ring [rɪŋ]	rang [ræŋ]	rung [rʌŋ]	дзвонити
rise [raɪz]	rose [rəʊz]	risen ['rɪzən]	сходити
run [rʌn]	ran [ræn]	run [rʌn]	бігти
say [seɪ]	said [sed]	said [sed]	говорити

INFINITIVE	PAST INDEFINITE	PAST PARTICIPLE	MEANING
see [si:]	saw [sɔ:]	seen [si:n]	бачити
seek [si:k]	sought [sɔ:t]	sought [sɔ:t]	шукати
sell [sel]	sold [səuld]	sold [səuld]	продавати
send [send]	sent [sent]	sent [sent]	посилати
set [set]	set [set]	set [set]	встановлювати
sew [səu]	sewed [seud]	sewed [seud]	шити
		sewn [səun]	
shake [ʃeik]	shook [ʃuk]	shaken [ˈʃeikən]	трясти
shine [ʃaɪn]	shone [ʃɒn]	shone [ʃɒn]	світити, сяяти
shoe [ʃu:]	shod [ʃɒd]	shod [ʃɒd]	взувати
shoot [ʃu:t]	shot [ʃɒt]	shot [ʃɒt]	стріляти
show [ʃəʊ]	showed [ʃəʊd]	shown [ʃəʊn]	показувати
sing [sɪŋ]	sang [sæŋ]	sung [sʌŋ]	співати
sit [sɪt]	sat [sæt]	sat [sæt]	сидіти
sleep [sli:p]	slept [slept]	slept [slept]	спати
slide [slaɪd]	slid [slɪd]	slid [slɪd]	ковзати
smell [smel]	smelt [smelt]	smelt [smelt]	пахнути
speak [spi:k]	spoke [spəʊk]	spoken [spəʊkn]	розмовляти
spell [spel]	spelt [spelt]	spelt [spelt]	писати/вимов-
	spelled [speld]	spelled [speld]	ляти по літерах
spend [spend]	spent [spent]	spent [spent]	витрачати
spread [spred]	spread [spred]	spread [spred]	намазувати
stand [stænd]	stood [stʊd]	stood [stʊd]	стояти
steal [sti:l]	stole [stəʊl]	stolen [stəʊln]	красти
strike [straɪk]	struck [strʌk]	struck [strʌk]	ударяти, бити
strive [straɪv]	strove [strəʊv]	striven [strɪvɪn]	старатися
sweep [swi:p]	swept [swept]	swept [swept]	підмітати
swim [swɪm]	swam [swæm]	swum [swʌm]	плавати
take [teɪk]	took [tʊk]	taken [teɪkn]	брати
teach [ti:tʃ]	taught [tɔ:t]	taught [tɔ:t]	навчати
tell [tel]	told [təʊld]	told [təʊld]	розказувати
think [θɪŋk]	thought [θɔ:t]	thought [θɔ:t]	думати
understand	understood	understood	розуміти
[ˌʌndə'stænd]	[ˌʌndə'stʊd]	[ˌʌndə'stʊd]	
upset [ʌp'set]	upset [ʌp'set]	upset [ʌp'set]	засмучувати(сь)
wake [weɪk]	woke [wəʊk]	woken [wəʊkn]	прокидатися
wear [weə]	wore [wɔ:]	worn [wɔ:n]	носити (одяг)

II. Texts for Reading

THE LOST CONTINENT OF ATLANTIS

1. Listen to the text about the lost continent of Atlantis and find 4 theories which explain the disappearance of the continent.

For centuries people have been discussing about the existence of the legendary continent of Atlantis.

In Greek mythology Atlantis is described as a large island which was destroyed by an earthquake around 9,000 BC. But could the great continent of Atlantis sink because of an earthquake? Most scientists think it isn't possible. An earthquake might have destroyed part of the island continent or caused landslides around its shores. But a quake couldn't destroy a huge landmass.

Had Atlantis been an island with a very low land? Might it have been flooded? Plato describes Atlantis as a mountainous country. A tsunami could have washed over Atlantis, but it could not have washed it away.

And a volcanic eruption could have blown part of the continent into the ocean. But if Atlantis was as big as Plato wrote about it, we would still see the continent above the sea.

And where was Atlantis situated? Plato writes that it was in the western sea or Atlantic Ocean as it is called today. If this is correct, could there be a geological explanation for its disappearance? Earlier many geologists supposed that a continent, Atlantis, sunk under the Atlantic waves. But today most scientists agree that Atlantis could be a part of North America. There is a theory of continental drift. While the continent of North America had moved and drifted away, Atlantis submerged in the Atlantic. Is it possible? No, it isn't. The continents are moving apart at the rate of about 5–9 centimetres a year, but Plato wrote about the submergence of Atlantis in a day and a night.

Believers in Atlantis think that discoveries of modern science will help to find the lost continent. Perhaps human beings existed long before the scientists think. Perhaps there was some extraordinary global catastrophe. Perhaps Atlantis didn't exist after all.

2. Are these statements true or false?

1. In Greek mythology Atlantis was a large island which was destroyed by an earthquake.

2. It is not possible for an earthquake to destroy a large continent.
 3. Atlantis is more likely to have been destroyed by floods.
 4. In the past many scientists believed that Atlantis was situated in the Atlantic Ocean.
 5. The theory of continental drift suggests a geological explanation for the disappearance of Atlantis.
 6. Atlantis was the mythical name of North America.
- 3. Complete these statements with explanations from the text.**
1. Atlantis couldn't have been destroyed by an earthquake because ___ .
 2. It couldn't have been submerged by flooding because ___ .
 3. A volcano could not have blown it into the sea because ___ .
 4. Atlantis couldn't have been the Greek name for North America because ___ .

ASTROLOGY

Most people know their astrological signs and the characteristics associated with the twelve signs of the zodiac. Astrology is based upon your month of birth. Traditional Chinese astrology is different. It's based on your year of birth. There are twelve signs, too, but they are named after animals. The Chinese New Year falls on a different date each year, but it begins somewhere between mid-January and mid-February. The twelve-year cycle begins with the year of the Rat, which last century first fell in 1900; so it is easy to calculate Chinese years.

The legend is that the order was decided thousands of years ago by Buddha, who called all the animals to a New Year meeting. Only twelve came and the years were named after the twelve animals in the order in which they arrived.

First was the aggressive Rat, second was the hard-working Ox. Then the smiling Tiger came, followed by the cautious Rabbit. The showy Dragon came next, then the wise Snake. The gifted Horse was next, followed by the gentle Goat, then the merry Monkey and the proud Rooster came. Last were the faithful Dog and the honest Pig.

Chinese believe that people born in specific years have characteristics of the year's animal. This should not be taken too seriously. The animals are symbols and the Chinese idea of each animal's character is often different from traditional Western view. The interesting

thing about the cycle of Chinese years is that they relate to the cycles of change in the Sun, which is known to affect the Earth's weather and may relate to the earthquakes and electrical changes in the atmosphere. And how seriously do you take them?

1. Are these statements true or false?

1. All people know the twelve signs of zodiac.
2. Astrology is based on someone's month of birth.
3. Traditional Chinese astrology is based on your month of birth.
4. Twelve Chinese signs are named after stars.
5. The twelve-year cycle begins with the year of the Pig.
6. Buddha called all the animals to a New Year meeting.
7. Only twenty animals came to Buddha.
8. The years were named after the animals in epy order in which they arrived.
9. Chinese idea is different from a traditional Western view.
10. We must take the signs seriously.

2. Choose the correct item a, b or c.

1. Most people know their astrological signs, associated
 - a) with the twelve signs of stars.
 - b) with the twelve signs of animals.
 - c) with the twelve signs of the zodiac.
2. Western astrology is based on
 - a) the Earth's weather.
 - b) the month of birth.
 - c) the animal's character.
3. The Chinese New Year falls on somewhere between
 - a) mid-February and mid-March.
 - b) mid-December and mid-January.
 - c) mid-January and mid-February.
4. The first animal that came to Buddha was
 - a) the hard-working Ox.
 - b) the wise Snake.
 - c) the aggressive Rat.
5. The last animal that arrived was
 - a) the honest Pig.
 - b) the smiling Tiger.
 - c) the merry Monkey.

6. The cycle of Chinese years relates to
- the Earth's weather.
 - the cycles of change in the atmosphere.
 - the cycles of change in the Sun.

3. Make up the questions for the answers:

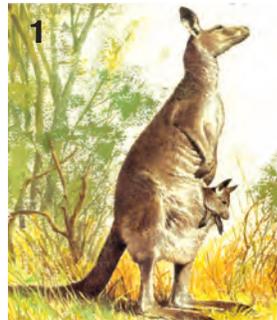
- With the 12 signs of the zodiac.
- Upon your month of birth.
- On your year of birth.
- After animals.
- Buddha did.
- Only twelve animals.
- Yes, they are symbols.

4. Project Work. Write some information about your horoscope.

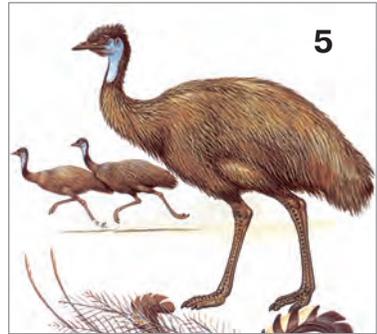
FAUNA OF AUSTRALIA

Australian seasons are different from those in Europe and North America. It's hot in December and many Australians spend Christmas at the beach, while in July and August it's midwinter. Summer begins in December, autumn – in March, winter – in June and spring – in September. Winter isn't too severe in most parts of Australia. Only in Tasmania it is very cold in winter.

Australia has fascinating native fauna. Some creatures are unique and can be found only on this land. Among them kangaroos (1) which are probably the most famous animals connected with Australia. The biggest of the fifty different kinds is the red kangaroo. They have big strong back legs and a tail and an adult can measure 2.4 metres high. They can jump more than four metres and run at 70 kilometres an hour.



Everyone loves the sleepy grey koalas (2). Like kangaroos, they have a pouch (a kind of pocket) on their fronts for their babies; after six months here, baby koalas ride on their mother's back. They live in eucalyptus trees, sleeping for eighteen hours and eating one kilo of leaves each day. They drink almost nothing; the word koala means



“no water”. A koala measures about 70 cm and weighs about 10 kg. Their most distinctive features are tufted ears and hard black nose.

The dingo (3) is Australia's native dog. It differs from the domestic dog in that it howls rather than barks and breeds only once a year.

Finally, two very strange animals – the echidna and the platypus (4). Their babies are born from eggs but drink milk from their mothers; no other animals in the world do this.

Australia's birdlife is as beautiful as it is varied, with over 750 species, many of them can be found only on this land.

The emu (5) is a shaggy feathered bird that stands two metres high. The only bird larger than the emu is the African ostrich, also flightless.

The laughing blue-winged kookaburra is heard as much as it is seen – you can't miss its loud, cackling laugh. This bird likes to visit friendly households, but only if the food is excellent.

The shy superb lyrebird is a ground-dwelling rainforest bird found in south-eastern Australia. It has a beautiful song and very clever mimics.

1. Are these statements true or false?

1. Australian seasons are different from those in Europe and North America.
2. The climatic extremes are too severe in most parts of Australia.
3. Some creatures are unique and can be found only in Australia.
4. There are fifty different kinds of kangaroos in Australia.
5. Baby kangaroos ride on their mother's back.
6. Koalas live in eucalyptus trees, sleeping for eighteen hours and eating one kilo of leaves each day.
7. A kangaroo measures about 70 cm and weighs about 10 kg.
8. The word koala means "no water" because they drink almost nothing.
9. Australia's native dog is the dingo.
10. You can't miss kookaburra's loud, cackling laugh.

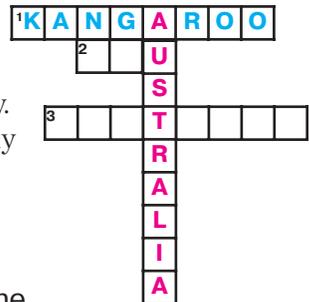
2. Choose the correct item a, b or c.

1. Australian seasons are
 - a) different from those in Europe and North America.
 - b) the same as in Europe and North America.
 - c) different from those in New Zealand.
2. Australians spend Christmas at the beach because
 - a) December is a midwinter.
 - b) autumn begins in December.
 - c) it's hot in December.
3. Winter begins
 - a) in March.
 - b) in June.
 - c) in September.
4. In Australia there are creatures that can be found
 - a) only on this land.
 - b) in Europe and North America.
 - c) everywhere.
5. The most recognizable animals connected with Australia are
 - a) echidna and the platypus.
 - b) kangaroos.
 - c) koalas.
6. They can jump more than four metres and travel at 70 kilometres an hour.
 - a) Grey koalas.
 - b) Dingoes.
 - c) Red kangaroos.

7. Grey koalas have a pouch like
 - a) kangaroos.
 - b) echidnas.
 - c) domestic dogs.
8. Koalas
 - a) drink much water.
 - b) eat one kilo of leaves each day.
 - c) drink much milk.
9. Their babies are born from eggs but drink milk from their mothers; no other animals in the world do this. They are
 - a) dingoes
 - b) echidna and platypus.
 - c) African ostriches.
10. It has a beautiful song and is very clever mimics.
 - a) The emu.
 - b) The kookaburra.
 - c) The lyrebird.

3. Complete the crossword:

1. An animal, a symbol of Australia shown in the coat of arms of this country.
2. A shaggy feathered bird that cannot fly and can be found only in Australia.
3. ...
4. ...

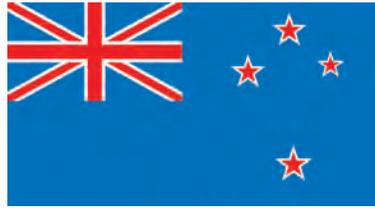


4. Project Work. Write a report about one of Australian animals or birds.

THE SMALLEST ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRY

You know that English-speaking countries are the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, the United States of America, Canada, Australia and New Zealand. New Zealand is the smallest one among them. Its capital is Wellington.

What kind of country is New Zealand? First of all, it is a long way from everywhere — three hours by plane from Australia and about twenty-six hours by plane from London. It is a country of islands; the North Island and the South Island are the main ones and there are many small ones.



It is a long, narrow land; nowhere in New Zealand is more than 125 kilometres from the sea. It is a little larger than Great Britain, but Great Britain has a population of 57 million and New Zealand has just 3.4 million people. It is an exciting and surprising land; as well as mountains, forests, lakes, deserts and rivers, there are places where hot water and steam explode out of the ground. It is in Rotorua, a city in the northern part of the North Island. Surely, it is the strangest place in New Zealand. You can walk beside lakes of hot water in extraordinary colours and there are pools of natural hot water where you can swim. The air smells like eggs there. Near Rotorua, steam is used to make electricity.

About 170 kilometres south of Rotorua are the Wailomo caves. These enormous caves were made by a river. The best part of a visit is a journey along the river in a boat; you travel silently through the darkness until suddenly you see thousands of little stars above you. In fact these stars are lights; they belong to very small animals, like flies, which live on the roof of the caves.

New Zealand is a young country. The first Maori people landed there a thousand years ago and the first British people came to live there around 1840.

The oldest tree in New Zealand is more than 1,200 years old, but you will not find many buildings that are more than about 150 years old.

1. Are these statements true or false?

1. New Zealand is a long way from everywhere – three hours by plane from London and about twenty-six hours by plane from Australia.
2. Nowhere in New Zealand is more than 125 kilometres from the sea.
3. Great Britain is smaller than New Zealand though Great Britain has a population of 57 million and New Zealand has just 3.4 million people.
4. The strangest place in New Zealand is surely the South Island.
5. There are many mountains, forests, lakes, deserts and rivers in New Zealand.
6. There are lakes of hot water in extraordinary colours and there are pools of natural hot water where you can swim in Rotorua.
7. The Wailomo caves are another strange and wonderful things in New Zealand.
8. Travelling through the darkness you can suddenly see thousands of little stars in the blue sky.
9. New Zealand is a young country.
10. The first people landed there a thousand years ago were Maori.

2. Choose the correct item a, b or c.

1. New Zealand is a long way
 - a) from Australia.
 - b) from everywhere.
 - c) from London.
2. Nowhere in New Zealand is more than
 - a) 125 kilometres from the sea.
 - b) 57 kilometres from the sea.
 - c) 34 kilometres from the sea.
3. New Zealand has a population of
 - a) 57 million people.
 - b) 3.4 million people.
 - c) one million people.
4. Rotorua is
 - a) in the South Island
 - b) in the centre of the country.
 - c) in the northern part of the North Island.
5. The capital of New Zealand is
 - a) Rotorua.
 - b) Wailomo.
 - c) Wellington.

6. In Rotorua you can walk beside lakes
 - a) of hot water.
 - b) of cold water.
 - c) full of eggs.
 7. Near Rotorua, steam is used to make
 - a) extraordinary colours.
 - b) electricity.
 - c) hot water.
 8. Wailomo caves were made
 - a) by a river.
 - b) by the British people.
 - c) by the Maori people
 9. The stars that you can see while travelling in the darkness are
 - a) in the sky.
 - b) on the roof of the caves.
 - c) in the river.
 10. The oldest tree in New Zealand is
 - a) 150 years old.
 - b) 1,840 years old.
 - c) more than 1,200 years old.
- 3.** Find any more information about New Zealand and prepare a game "Decoder" for you classmates. (Consult page 215.)
- 4. Project Work.** Work in groups. Choose an English-speaking country and make an interesting report for the album "English-speaking Countries".

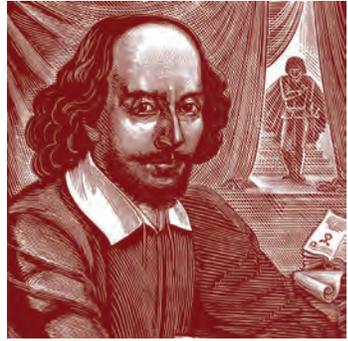
ENGLISH POETS

Great Britain gave the world lot of talented people. Many famous writers and poets were born and lived in Great Britain.

One of the best known English playwrights was William Shakespeare. He drew ideas for his tragedies and comedies from the history of England and ancient Rome. Many people know and like his works but many facts of Shakespeare's life are still unknown.

William Shakespeare was born in 1564 in Stratford-on-Avon, a small English town. He studied at local grammar school, because his father wanted his son to be an educated person. Young William was fond of actor's profession and decided to become an actor. Therefore

he went to London. There he played and wrote plays as well. His plays were staged in many theatres and were translated into many languages. The writer wrote thirty seven plays. He cooperated with the best English theaters during twenty five years. His best and the most famous plays are «Othello», «King Lear», «Hamlet», «Romeo and Juliet». William Shakespeare died in



1616. But his plays and poems are still popular now and millions of people still admire them. Read one of them – the soliloquy of Hamlet.

To be or not be, – that is the question;
Whether 'tis nobler in the mind to suffer
The slings and arrows of outrageous fortune
Or to take arias against a sea of troubles
And by opposing end them? To die, to sleep;
No more? And by a sleep, to say we end
The heart-ache and the thousand natural shocks
That flesh is heir to. 'Tis a consumation
Devoutly to be wish'd. To die, to sleep.
To sleep! Perchance to dream. Ay, there's the rub.
For in that sleep of death, what dreams may come,
When we have shuffled off this mortal coil
Must give us pause. There's the respect
That makes calamity of so long life.
For who would bear the whips and scorns of time,
Th' oppressor's wrong, the proud man's contumely,
The pangs of despis'd love, the law's delay,
The insolence of office and the spurns
That patient merit of th' unworthy takes,
When he himself might his quietus make
With a bare bodkin? Who would these fardels bear,
To grunt and sweat under a weary life,
But that the dread of something after death –
The undiscover'd country, from whose bourn
No traveller returns – puzzles the will,
And makes us rather bear those ills we have
Than fly to others that we know not of!

And now meet another famous English poet John Cornford. J. Cornford was born in 1915 in Cambridge. His father was a professor. He read lectures at Cambridge University. His mother was a poetess. John studied at Cambridge University. His fate was very tragic. He was under the influence of revolutionary ideas and took part in the civil war in Spain. In one of the battles he was killed. Read one of his verses.

The poetry of earth is never dead:
When all the birds are faint with the hot sun,
And hide in cooling trees, a voice will run
From hedge to hedge about the new-mown mead,
That is the Grasshopper's – he takes the lead
In summer luxury, – he has never done
With his delights, for when tired out with fun
He rests at ease beneath some pleasant weed.
The poetry of earth is ceasing never:
On a lone winter evening, when the frost
Has wrought a silence, from the stove there shrills
The Cricket's song, in warmth increasing ever,
And seems to one in drowsiness half lost,
The Grasshopper's among some grassy hills.

1. Learn by heart and recite one of the poems.
2. Find the translation of the verses by L. Grebinka and S. Marshak at your school library or try your hand at translating them into your mother tongue.
3. Find any more information and interesting facts about William Shakespeare and prepare a quiz "Unknown Shakespeare" for you classmates. Start each fact with the sentence: **Do you believe that ...**
4. **Project Work.** Work in groups. Choose any English writer or poet and make an interesting report for the album "British Literature".

III. Texts for Listening Comprehension

Ex. 3, p. 6

Hello! I am Denis Kravchenko. Last year I finished the 9th form and sat for my final examinations in English, Geography, Biology, Algebra and wrote a Ukrainian dictation.

I could enter a vocational school or a trade school. But I want to be a doctor - a surgeon, therefore I plan to enter the Medical University. So I decided to go to the 10th form at my school. I am interested in a deep study of Chemistry. I will attend the Chemical class.

My favourite subjects are Chemistry, Biology, History and Literature. I think these subjects are very important for my future life.

I am fond of reading. I read both popular scientific literature (books on chemistry, biology, history) and belletristic literature. I enjoy reading classical literature and books by modern writers. My favourite writer is Anatoliy Rybakov. My favourite book is "Arbat's Children".

Besides I also like to play football and volleyball. I often spend my free time with my friends. I have got many friends.

I like animals. I have got a pet. It's my dog Night.

Ex. 2, p. 11

The weather was bad the day before yesterday. It was wet, cloudy and chilly.

The day before my friends and me decided to go to the country. We are the members of a photo study group. The weather was fine, the sun shined brightly, therefore we planned to take some photos of nature in the countryside.

But our plans fell to the ground because of the rain.

So I sat in an arm-chair and looked through the window. It was raining. "The sun isn't shining brightly", I thought. The sun didn't shine at all that day. There were no people in the street. I saw a car, but suddenly it thundered and the car stopped. "What has happened? Lightning?" I thought. Oh! It was pouring. It rained dogs and cats! But in a moment I noticed it wasn't pouring. It was hailing. The hails as large as cherries fell like hard balls of ice.

I jumped up, caught my camera and began to photograph.

The hail stopped as suddenly as began. But photos were taken! Well done!

Ex. 2, p. 16

Hello, I'm Michael. Let me tell you about my elder sister. Her name is Mary. She is a pretty young woman of 25 years of age. She graduated from the Medical Academy two years ago and works as a doctor in a hospital. She is very clever and hard-working. I think she is a person with a bright future.

I'd like to say a few words about her appearance. As I said she looked very pretty. She is rather tall and slim. Her hair is curly, thick and dark. It is of shoulder length. Mary has got large hazel eyes. Her nose is neither long nor short. It is snub a little. Her lips are full. She has got a square face. Her skin is tanned as our father has got. There is a little mole on her cheek. Boys like my sister, but her heart is still free.

Mary is a kind and cheerful young woman. She has got many friends. Her friends and family love her because she is a very good person who is always ready to help people.

Ex. 2, p. 25

Teacher: Dear friends! You know that to be healthy you should lead a healthy way of life. Tell me, please, what you do to be healthy.

I see Helen wants to give us a piece of good advice. Welcome, Helen.

Helen: Let me say a few words about a healthy way of life. I think that to be healthy we should eat healthy food. As for me I try to eat less fat, sugar and salt. Besides I usually eat many fresh vegetables and fruits.

Teacher: Thank you, Helen. And you, Peter? Would you like to add a few words?

Peter: Yes, I do. Thank you. I agree with Helen, but I think healthy eating isn't enough for our health. As for me, to be in a good shape I go jogging every morning and do my morning exercises.

Tom: Mrs Black, may I add a few words?

Teacher: Yes, of course, Tom, you may.

Tom: I would like to say, that sport is a very important part of our life. Peter is right. To keep fit we should always do our morning exercises. Besides I advise you to go in for one of the different kinds of sports. I mean to train yourselves in different sport clubs. As for me, I have been playing tennis for six years.

Teacher: Ann, what do you want to add?

Ann: My friends gave us some pieces of good advice. But I'd like to say what we mustn't do to be healthy. We should say 'no' to cigarettes, alcoholic drinks and drugs. As for me I never smoked, drank spirits and took drugs.

Teacher: Thank you, Ann. Children, and what do you do to be healthy?

Ex. 8, p. 38

Mike is an American. But he lives in Kyiv.

He is fifteen years old. Mike was born in Boston on the 7th of August in 1995. His mother is Ukrainian and his parent left for Kyiv when he was a child. He had lived in the USA till 1998. Then his family left for Ukraine. So the boy speaks Ukrainian and English very well.

Mike always takes care of his health. He doesn't smoke because it's very harmful. He eats only healthy food. He is a vegetarian. His favourite dish is noodles with stewed vegetables. To be healthy he eats much fresh fruit and

vegetables. Besides he does his morning exercises every day and goes in for sports. He is fond of playing football. But don't mix up. He doesn't like soccer. His favourite game is American football. Last year Mike began to go in for parkour. The boy is interested in extreme kinds of sports.

Mike goes to school specialized in foreign languages and computer studying. He is in the tenth form. He studies 4 foreign languages: English, German, French and Russian. But his favourite subjects are Algebra and Computer Studies. He enjoys doing the sums because he likes puzzles very much. The boy is going to be a computer programmer in the future therefore he studies hard.

Ex. 2, p. 61

I am Bohdan Snytko. I'd like to tell you about my hobby. I like watching films. I also collect films which won Oscar rewards.

Once I read an article about various kinds of entertainment. It says that TV and cinema become more and more popular among people of different ages all over the world. There was a time when people knew what to do to enjoy themselves: they played musical instruments, sang, read a lot, gave balls and danced. Nowadays we enjoy watching TV, going to the theatre or the cinema. And I think it is splendid!

Unfortunately I don't like reading very much. But thanks to the cinema I can learn many works of literature, both classic and modern. You can watch cinema no matter where you live. As for me, I have a cable television at home. It is very convenient. There are many different channels there and I can choose the film I like. Besides, I often watch films on computer or DVD-player. I usually take films in a video rental shop. Sometimes I exchange DVD-disks with my friends.

I am also a great cinema-goer. Visiting the cinema is a modern ritual. You buy popcorn and enjoy the film. You can always find the film you like among horror films, thrillers, westerns, detectives, melodramas, musical films, super-films or comedies.

I think cinema is one of the greatest human discoveries.

Ex. 8, p. 73

My father and me decided to go to the cinema yesterday. The film was directed by Quentin Tarantino. The cinema wasn't closed, but we couldn't watch the film, because the tickets were sold.

The cinema was situated not far from the ballet theatre. I have never seen a ballet before. I am not a great theatre-goer at all. But my dad asked me and we went there. The ballet "Nutcracker" was performed that day. The music was written by Tchaikovsky. We bought two tickets, a play-bill and went to the hall. I read in the play-bill that the leading roles were acted by Russian dancers from St. Petersburg. At eight o'clock the performance began. I was surprised that I liked the show. The ballet-dancers danced

wonderful. When the show was over two hour later, I applauded louder than others. The dancers were presented with flowers. They were called to the stage several times. The performance was a great success with public. I was not sorry about the evening. I think a ballet is a beautiful art.

Ex. 2, p. 97

I think it's impossible to imagine our life without radio and TV. They are widely used in today's world. It is the fastest means of spreading news and information.

When I come home after classes, I switch on the radio and do my work about the house. My favourite radio stations are Europe Plus and Hit FM. They broadcast many interesting programmes, but I like to listen to news and music.

I am also fond of watching TV in the evenings. Many different films are broadcasted on TV. They are dramas, melodramas, musical films, horror films, thrillers, crime stories, westerns, super-films, comedies and others. As for me I prefer crime stories and comedies. The best TV channels for me are Discovery Channel and "1+1". Sometimes I switch on a TV set to watch an interesting programme or show. For example, I enjoy watching such shows as "I Dance for You" and "Ukraine has many talents" on TV at weekends. Every evening I watch news on TV.

I think people cannot live without TV and radio nowadays.

Ex. 8, p. 108

Welcome to our Internet Club.

There are four large rooms in our club.

The first room is for those who like to play computer games. You can play both computer games for one player and team games for several players. Our club lets you choose the team game in our club network or an Internet on-line game. But there is a rule in our Internet Club. Children under 16 can play computer games here if their parents allow them to do it. It is forbidden the boys and girls to play in our Internet Club if they have no written permission. If the children are allowed to play computer games they bring a written permission with mobile phone numbers of their parents.

The second room is for those who want to check and send messages by e-mail, to talk in different chats and forums, to find new friends by ICQ or watch a film using ear-laps. You may drink some juice or tea and have a snack here.

In the third room you can work on computer using Internet. Besides our computers allow you to use different computer programmes such as Word, Excel, PowerPoint, Photoshop, Corel Draw, Quark, Illustrator, Lingvo and others. It is forbidden to talk in this room.

The forth room is a training room. We have got many skilled instructors. They can train you to work in different computer programmes or use Internet resources.

Ex. 2, p. 130

I am fond of music. Some people like to listen to it or sing song. But I prefer playing the piano. I went to music school. Last year I pass my exams and get my diploma in piano. I was invited to St. Peter's Church and now I accompany a choir on the piano in Saturdays and Sundays. But I hope to make myself a career in music.

I am going to enter the music conservatory in three years. Now I continue to take my music lessons. I often practise on the piano at home. I am fond of Bach's, Mozart's, Beethoven's classical music. The Moonlight Sonata is one of my favourite pieces of music. My favourite modern composer is Igor Krutoy. Sometimes I try to write music, too. But I understand that I am not a great composer.

I also play the guitar. When my classmates and me take camping trips, we often play the guitar and sing songs.

I cannot imagine my life without music.

Ex. 8, p. 143

Hi, I'm Peter. I would like to tell you about my last visit to my father's friend Oscar.

My dad told me that Oscar was very hospitable and he played the guitar very well. My father said that they had studied together at school fifteen years before.

When we came to the Oscar's he asked me if I could play the guitar or the piano. I answered that I didn't play any musical instrument. And father added that as for him he preferred listening to the guitar to playing it. Oscar promised that he would play the guitar after supper and asked me what my favourite composer was. I said that I liked some Straus's waltzes but I was fond of modern popular music more than classical one.

After supper Oscar played the guitar and sang bard's songs. He played very well. I asked if he had got a perfect pitch. He said with a smile that he had an ear for music at the most. I asked if he could teach me to play the guitar and Oscar promised that he would do it.

Then my father and Oscar talked about their classmates and showed me their old photos.

Ex. 2, p. 165

Hello! I am Adam. I live in London. It is the capital of the United Kingdom. It is its political, economic and cultural centre. London is one of the largest and most interesting cities in the world. London is situated on the river Thames. The city is very old and beautiful. It is also the main city of England.

Let me say a few words about each part of Great Britain. As you know, the United Kingdom consists of four parts: England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland. England, the central part, occupies the most of the island

of Great Britain. It is the largest region of the UK. It is a country of forests and plains. There are no high mountains in this country. The national symbol of England is a red rose.

To the west lies Wales. Cardiff is the main city of Wales. The national symbol of Wales is a daffodil. Wales is the country of lakes and mountains. There are very beautiful mountains in the north of Wales.

In the north of Great Britain the third part of the country, Scotland, is situated. There is the highest peak of Great Britain, Ben Nevis. The capital of Scotland is Edinburgh. The national symbol of this country is a thistle. A lot of places in Scotland are a natural paradise, still untouched by man. Scotland is also the land of mysteries. I think, everyone knows about the Loch Ness Monster.

The fourth part, the Northern Ireland or Ulster, is located in the north of the second island, Ireland. The capital of the Northern Ireland is Belfast. The national symbol is a shamrock. The history of the country is tragic and full of legends and historic facts. Northern Ireland has a strong cultural tradition: songs, dances, literature and festivals.

Ex. 6, p. 180

Mrs White is British.

It's a quarter past seven and Mrs White has her breakfast at home.

Breakfast is in the morning between 8 and 9 o'clock in the UK. It used to be a large meal with cereal, eggs and bacon, sausages and tomatoes. But nowadays the British don't usually eat much for breakfast. The main meal is dinner in Great Britain.

At first Mrs White ate some cornflakes with milk. Mrs White didn't eat bread because she eats bread only with a meat dish.

Now she is drinking tea. A cup of green tea is a usual start of her working day. The woman doesn't drink coffee because it isn't good for health. Sometimes she drinks juices or mineral water. But she prefers them for dinner.

For a dessert Mrs White will take some toasts with jam.

Ex. 2, p. 197

Hello, I am Tom. I live in the United Kingdom. I am English. But my grandfather is Ukrainian. He lives at the coast of the Black Sea on the Crimean peninsula in Ukraine.

I like this country very much. Its nature is beautiful. There are many fields, forests, steppes, rivers and lakes there. Ukraine has two seas. There are some seas in the United Kingdom, too. But the water is cold in them. Therefore I like to spend my summer holidays at the Black Sea. There are nice beaches there. The weather is usually fine. It doesn't rain. So I can swim, dive and sunbathe all day long. Sometimes my grandpa and me go boating and fishing.

There are the Crimean Mountains there. I had some trips to the mountains last year. I saw caves. It was so beautiful there!

There are many lovely places in my native place, too. Come to see them! Welcome! You will have a nice time.

Ex. 2, p. 223

I am a pupil of the tenth form. I study at school number 35 in Kharkiv. Pupils at our school learn different languages: Ukrainian, Russian, English, French and German. English, French and German are foreign languages. I learn English and German. But my favourite subject is English.

I have been learning it for six years. I have my English three times a week. Every Monday, Wednesday and Friday I take my English text-book, vocabulary and exercise-book and go to my English lesson.

The bell rings and the teacher and the pupils come into the classroom. We sit down at our tables, open our text-books and the lesson begins. During the lesson we listen to the tape-recorder, ask each other questions and speak out on what we have heard. Sometimes it is a story, sometimes it is a dialogue or a conversation. They are not very long but are always very interesting. We speak English a lot, but we read texts from our text-books, too. We learn many facts about English-speaking countries, traditions and customs of their people. We speak about writers and read extracts from their books.

We also write sentences on the blackboard, learn grammar rules and do exercises at the lesson. Two times a month we have our home reading lessons. At these lessons we speak about what we have read and discuss interesting places from our books.

I never get bad marks at my English lessons because I always prepare my homework well. I like my English lessons very much and come there with great pleasure.

Ex. 5, p. 233

David is eleven. He lives in Edinburgh, the capital of Scotland.

He goes to a junior school. He has such subjects as English, Maths, History, Music, Natural Sciences, Drawing, Handicrafts, French and Latin in his timetable. His lessons begin later than in Ukraine, but English boys and girls stay at school longer.

His first lesson usually starts at 9 o'clock. There are three lessons before an hour break for lunch. Besides, after each lesson he and his classmates have short breaks of 10 minutes. After lunch they have two more lessons. The classes are over at half past three.

David loves animals very much, he wants to be a vet in the future and help sick animals, therefore he studies Natural Sciences hard. He likes to study. This summer he will go to a secondary school.

IV. English-Ukrainian Vocabulary

Aa

ability [ə'bilɪti] здібність
according [ə'kɔ:diŋ] відповідно до
accordion [ə'kɔ:dʒən] акордеон
account [ə'kaʊnt] налічувати
address [ə'dres] звертатись
adventure [əd'ventʃə] пригода
advertisement [əd've:tismənt] реклама
allow [ə'laʊ] дозволяти, давати можливість
article ['ɑ:tɪkl] стаття
attend [ə'tend] відвідувати

Bb

ballet ['bæleɪ] балет
biography [baɪ'ɒgrəfi] біографія
birth [bɜ:θ] народження
border ['bɔ:də] кордон, межувати
Bosphorus ['bɔ:spərəs] протока Босфор
British ['brɪtɪʃ] британський
broadcast ['brɔ:dkɑ:st] транслювати, віщати

Cc

canoeing [kə'nu:ɪŋ] веслування
cello ['tʃeləʊ] віолончель
census ['sensəs] перепис, збір даних
chalk [tʃɔ:k] крейда
channel ['tʃænl] канал
choir ['kwaɪə] церковний або шкільний хор
chorus ['kɔ:rəs] хор
cigarette [ˌsɪgə'ret] цигарка
classical ['klæsɪk(ə)l] класичний
Classics ['klæsɪks] антична культура, класичні мови (латинь, грецька)
cliff [klɪf] обрив, стрімчак

climb ['klaɪm] вздератися, лазити
coast [kəʊst] морське узбережжя
collect [kə'lekt] збирати
comedy ['kɒmɪdɪ] комедія
compose [kəm'pəʊz] писати музику
composer [kəm'pəʊzə] композитор
compulsory [kəm'pʌlsəri] обов'язковий
computer user [kəm,pju:tə'ju:zə] користувач ПК
contain [kən'teɪn] містити
correspondent [ˌkɒrɪs'pɒndənt] кореспондент
cover ['kʌvə] огортати, накривати, охоплювати
crime [kraɪm] злочин

Dd

daily ['deɪli] щоденний
dangerous ['deɪndʒərəs] небезпечний
Danube ['dænju:b] Дунай
data (pl) ['deɪtə] дані
death [deθ] смерть
deep [di:p] глибокий
deer (pl. deer) [diə] олень
detective [dɪ'tektɪv] детектив, детективний
difficult ['dɪfɪk(ə)lt] складний
disco ['diskəʊ] дискотека
discovery [dɪs'kʌv(ə)ɪ] відкриття
drama ['drɑ:mə] драматичний
drugs ['drʌgz] наркотики
drum [drʌm] барабан
duty ['dju:ti] обов'язок

Ee

eagle ['i:gl] орел
educate ['edju(:)keɪt] давати освіту

education [ˌedʒuˈkeɪʃən] освіта
encyclopedia [ɪnˌsaɪkləˈpiːdiə] енциклопедія
England [ˈɪŋɡlənd] Англія
enjoy [ɪnˈdʒɔɪ] насолоджуватись, отримувати задоволення
enough [ɪˈnʌf] досить
entertainment [ˌentəˈteɪnmənt] захід
equipment [ɪˈkwɪpmənt] обладнання
examination [ɪɡˌzæmɪˈneɪʃən] складати іспит
excellent [ˈeks(ə)lənt] відмінний, чудовий
except [ɪkˈsept] крім
exchange [ɪksˈtʃeɪndʒ] обмінюватись
exciting [ɪkˈsaɪtɪŋ] захоплюючий
experience [ɪksˈpɪəriəns] досвід
extreme [ɪksˈtriːm] екстремальний

Ff

fact [fækt] факт
failed [ˈfeɪld] невдало
fairy tale [ˈfeəriːteɪl] казка
fantasy [ˈfæntəsi] уява, фантазія
fee-paying [ˈfiːˌpeɪɪŋ] платний
free [friː] безкоштовний, вільний
freeriding [ˈfriːˌraɪdɪŋ] фрірай-дінг (вид велосипедного спорту)
full [fʊl] повний
funds [fʌndz] кошти

Gg

gather [ˈɡæðə] збирати
genre [ˌʒɑːŋr] жанр
global [ˈɡləʊbəl] світовий
government [ˈɡʌvnmənt] уряд
guitar [ɡɪˈtɑː] гитара

Hh

habit [ˈhæbɪt] звичка
harbour [ˈhɑːbə] гавань
harp [hɑːp] арфа
healthy [ˈhelθi] здоровий
highland [ˈhaɪlənd] плато, нагір'я
hill [hɪl] височина, пагорб
hobby [ˈhɒbi] хобі
horror [ˈhɒrə] жах, страх

Ii

imaginary [ɪˈmædʒɪn(ə)rɪ] вигаданий
include [ɪnˈkluːd] включати
information [ˌɪnfəˈmeɪʃ(ə)n] інформація
Internet [ˈɪntənət] Інтернет
Irish [ˈaɪ(ə)rɪʃ] ірландський, ірландець
isle [aɪl] острів (*noem.*)

Jj

jazz [dʒæz] джаз
journalist [ˈdʒɔːnəlɪst] журналіст

Kk

kayaking [ˈkaɪækɪŋ] веслування на байдарках
kind [kaɪnd] 1) вид, сорт; 2) добрий
kindergarten [ˈkɪndəˌɡɑːtʃn] дитсадок
kingdom [ˈkɪŋdəm] королівство
knowledge [ˈnɒlɪdʒ] знання

Ll

last [lɑːst] тривати
law [lɔː] закон
lead [led] вести, проводити
leisure [ˈleɪzə] дозвілля
length [leŋθ] довжина
level [ˈlevl] плаский
life [laɪf] життя
link [lɪŋk] з'єднувати
long [ˈlɒŋ] тривалістю у ...

low [ləʊ] низький
lower [ˈləʊə] нище
lowland [ˈləʊlənd] низина, долина
lyceum [laɪˈsi:əm] лицей

Mm

magazine [ˌmæɡəˈzi:n] журнал
mass media [ˌmæsˈmi:diə] ЗМІ
(засоби масової інформації)
melodrama [ˈmeləʊˌdrɑ:mə]
мелодрама
mid [mɪd] середина
mix up [ˈmɪksʌp] переплутати
mixed forest [ˈmɪkstˈfɒrɪst]
мішаний ліс
monthly [ˈmʌnθli] щомісячний
move on [ˈmu:vɒn] переходити
movie (*AmE*) [ˈmu:vi] кіно
movie star [ˈmu:vɪstɑ:] кінозірка
murder [ˈmɜ:də] вбивство

Nn

narrow [ˈnæəəʊ] вузький
NATO [ˈneɪtəʊ] (**North-Atlantic Treaty Organization**) – НАТО
(Північноатлантичний союз)
news [nju:z] новина (-и)
newspaper [ˈnju:sˌpeɪpə] газета
non-fiction [ˌnɒnˈfɪkʃən] неви-
гаданий, реальний
Northern Ireland [ˈnɔ:ðən
ˈaɪələnd] Північна Ірландія
Norwegian [nɔ:ˈwi:ʒ(ə)n]
норвезький
novel [ˈnɒv(ə)l] роман

Oo

opera [ˈɒp(ə)rə] опера
over [ˈə və] понад

Pp

parachute [ˈpærəʃu:t] парашут
parkour [pɑ:ˈku:r] паркур

particular [pəˈtɪkjʊlə] окремих,
певний
pass [pɑ:s] складати
peninsula [pɪˈnɪnsjələ] півострів
performance [pəˈfɔ:məns] вистава
piano [pɪˈæniəʊ] фортепіано
plain [pleɪn] рівнина
play [pleɪ] п'єса, вистава
poem [ˈpəʊɪm] вірш
poet [ˈpəʊɪt] поет
poetry [ˈpəʊɪtri] поезія
population [ˌpɒpjʊˈleɪʃ(ə)n]
населення
populous [ˈpɒpjʊləs] густонасе-
лений
pre-school [ˌpri:ˈsku:l] дошкільний
previous [ˈpri:vjəs] попередній
primary [ˈpraɪməri] початкова
(школа, освіта)
print [prɪnt] друкувати
probably [ˈprɒb(ə)blɪ] напевно,
мабуть
programme *BrE* (**program** *AmE*)
[ˈprəʊgræm] програма
prose [ˈprəʊz] проза
provide [prəˈvaɪd] забезпечувати
puppet-show [ˈpʌpɪtʃəʊ]
ляльковий(а) вистава/театр

Qq

qualitative [ˈkwɒlɪtətɪv] якісний
quantitative [ˈkwɒntɪtətɪv] кількісний
quite [kwaɪt] цілком

Rr

radio [ˈreɪdɪəʊ] радіо
range [reɪndʒ] ряд
reach [ri:tʃ] досягати
receive [rɪˈsi:v] отримувати
receive [rɪˈsi:v] отримувати
recently [ˈri:sntli] останнім
часом, нещодавно
relax [rɪˈlæks] відпочивати

relaxation [ˌri:læk'seɪʃ(ə)n] розслаблення
replace [rɪ'pleɪs] замінити
reporter [rɪ'pɔ:tə] репортер
require [rɪ'kwaɪə] вимагати
rest [rest] відпочинок
rumour ['ru:mə] чутка

Ss

saxophone ['sæksəfəʊn] саксофон
science fiction [ˌsaɪəns'fɪkʃən] наукова фантастика
Scotch [skɒtʃ] шотландець
Scotland ['skɒtlənd] Шотландія
Scottish ['skɒtɪʃ] шотландський
screen version ['skri:n'vɜ:ʃ(ə)n] екранізація
secondary ['sekəndəri] середня (школа, освіта)
separate ['seprɪt] окремих, відокремлювати
serial ['sɪəriəl] серіал
shallow ['ʃæləʊ] мілкий
sheet [ʃi:t] аркуш
smoke ['sməʊk] палити
source [sɔ:s] джерело
spare [speə] вільний (час), запасний
specialization [ˌspeʃəlaɪ'zeɪʃən] спеціальність, спеціалізація
speleology [ˌspi:lɪ'blɒdʒɪ] спеліологія
spend [spend] проводити (час, життя); витратити (гроші)
spirits ['spɪrɪts] міцні напої
stage [steɪdʒ] етап
star [stɑ:] зірка
state [steɪt] держава, державний
steppe [step] степ
story ['stɔ:ri] повість, оповідання
strait [streɪt] протока
structure ['strʌktʃə] структура

subject ['sʌbdʒɪkt] 1) предмет (*у школі*); 2) підмет
super-film ['sjupə'fɪlm] бойовик
supply [sə'plaɪ] надавати
surround [sə'gaʊnd] оточувати
switch [swɪtʃ] вмикати, перемикає, вимикати
synonym ['sɪnənɪm] синонім
synthesizer ['sɪnθaɪzə] синтезатор

Tt

tale ['teɪl] оповідання, казка
teach [ti:tʃ] навчати
technical college ['teknɪk(ə)'kɒlɪdʒ] технічний вуз
television (TV) ['telɪvɪʒən / ,ti:vi:] телебачення (ТБ)
tense [tens] час (*грам.*)
term [tɜ:m] 1) термін, 2) семестр, чверть (*у школі*)
thriller ['θrɪlə] триллер
tired ['taɪəd] втомлений
tiring ['taɪərɪŋ] виснажливий
total ['təʊtl] загальний
trade [treɪd] професія
tragedy ['trædʒɪdɪ] трагедія
treeless ['tri:lɪs] безлісний
true [tru:] правдивий
trumpet ['trʌmpɪt] труба (*муз.*)
tune [tju:n] мелодія
turn ['tɜ:n] досягати, повертати

Uu

unclassified [ʌn'klæsɪfaɪd] неатестовано
union ['ju:njən] об'єднання
united [ju'naɪtɪd] об'єднаний
university [ˌju:nɪ'vɜ:sɪtɪ] університет
unsatisfactory [ˌʌn,sætɪs'fækt(ə)rɪ] незадовільно

Vv

varied [ˈveəriəd] різноманітний
various [ˈveəriəs] різноманітний
view [vju:] погляд, точка зору
viewer [ˈvju:ə] глядач
village [ˈvɪlɪdʒ] село
vinegar [ˈvɪnɪɡə] оцет
violin [ˌvaɪəˈlɪn] скрипка
vocational school [vəʊˈkeɪʃənəl
ˈsku:l] професійне училище
voice [vɔɪs] голос
vowel [ˈvaʊəl] голосний

Ww

Wales [weɪlz] Уельс
wash [wɒʃ] омивати
wavy [ˈweɪvi] хвилястий
weekly [ˈwi:kli] щотижневий

weigh [weɪ] зважувати
well-built [ˈwelˈbɪlt] міцний за
статурою
Welsh [welʃ] уельсець
west [west] захід
western [ˈwestən] вестерн
whether [ˈweðə] чи
wetland [ˈwetlənd] заболочена
місцевість
wheat [wi:t] пшениця
while [waɪl] у той час, як; тим
часом
whilst [waɪlst] поки
wide [waɪd] широкий
within [wɪˈðɪn] не далі ніж
wool [wʊl] вовна, вовняний
wrinkled [ˈrɪŋkld] зморшкуватий
writer [ˈraɪtə] письменник

CONTENTS

Revision

Lessons 1–3	
Lessons 4–6	
Lessons 7–9	

Basic Course

Unit One	It's My Life
Unit Two	Books in My Life
Unit Three	Sources of Information
Unit Four	Music in Our Life
Unit Five	The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland
Unit Six	Ukraine
Unit Seven	Education

Supplement

I.	Irregular Verbs
II.	Texts for Listening Comprehension
III.	Texts for Reading
IV.	English-Ukrainian Vocabulary